

Walter Ripman's *Classified Vocabulary*

Introduction

When it comes to learning any language, mastering as quickly as possible as much as possible of the vocabulary is one of the most important tasks in store for the student. „Ay, there's the rub,“ as Hamlet says. How can you do so?

It is impossible to learn *all* words, the vocabulary of most languages being far too large for such a brute force approach. While it might be possible to do so for the vocabulary of a single book, it may be wiser to choose a different approach, one giving heed to the „law of diminishing returns.“

There are two ways of selectively learning the important vocabulary:

1. Using word lists derived from word frequency
2. Using a topical vocabulary

The first approach is exemplified by Paul B. Diederich's "The frequency of Latin words and their endings", in which paper he lists word frequencies for more than 4,000 words.

The second approach is also exemplified by a piece of work by Paul B. Diederich, the „Basic Vocabulary“ of about 1,500 words, attached to the aforementioned paper. These words are sorted into word types (nouns, adjectives, etc.) and further into various categories like „Gods“, „City and Buildings“, „Verbs – Mental and Sensory Operations“.

However, a far more detailed vocabulary was published by Walter Ripman as part of his „Handbook of the Latin Language“.¹ It was used by Evan Millner, the creator of the *Latinum* language course, to create a set of „Vocabulary Building“ audio files. It closely follows the text. The original text, however, includes additional information useful to the student, for example concerning case constructions. I also found these audio files rather hard to digest without having first read the text itself or looking at the text while listening to the files.

Unfortunately, Ripman's „Classified Vocabulary“ has been been unavailable online until now, which is all the more lamentable as the dictionary part of it is very good as well, as it contains many sample phrases. Therefore I decided to bring at least the „Classified Vocabulary“ to the wider public, in the hope that it may help in getting a better grasp of the Latin language.

I want to stress that this publication is in no way connected with the *Latinum* course – which I can heartily recommend, by the way. So, any fault lies solely with me.

I mostly stuck with the original text, making some changes to the formatting to improve its readability. The transcription – as opposed to a facsimile edition – results in a loss of (a little) part of the information contained in the original book as Mr. Ripman used a rather ideosyncratic layout which sometimes juxtaposed contrasting words.

I used the macrons as given in the original publication, so use them at your own risk. In a few cases, however, I added or removed macrons when these were obvious errata (relying on the information given in the dictionary part of the book). The most important changes made by me can be found in Appendix 2.

The abbreviations used in the text are collected in Appendix 1.

31 August 2011 (2nd edition) – Carolus Raeticus

¹ Walter Ripman, „A Handbook of the Latin Language – Being a Dictionary, Classified Vocabulary, and Grammar“

Index

1-3	Time	3
4-6	Place	8
7	Land	16
8	Farming	18
9	Sea, River, etc.	19
10	Sky	21
11	Seasons, Winds, Weather	21
12-16	Physical Properties	22
17-20	Size and Quality	27
21	Animals	31
22	Plants	33
23	Minerals	34
24-27	Man	35
28	Town	42
29	House	43
30	Government	45
31	Religion	49
32	Chance; Fate	50
33	Property, Trade	51
34	Offer, Request, Order, Give, Allow	54
35	Amusement, Sport	56
36	Tools, Materials, etc.	57
37	Army	57
38	Character	63
39	Work, Duty	66
40	Learning, Knowledge	68
41-43	Voice, Speech	74
44	Emotions	80
45	Law	84
46	Danger, Protection, Help	85
47	Guilt, Punishment	87
48-50	Sundry Groups	89

The Classified Vocabulary

1-3 TIME

1.1 time

tempus, time; t. dūcere, agere, dēgere, spend time; t. terere, waste, lose time; t. (annus, diēs) intercēdit, intervenes, passes

aeternus, eternal, everlasting; *noun* **aeternitās**
sempiternus, **perennis**, perpetual, enduring;
noun **perennitās**

perpetuus, continuous, permanent; *noun*
perpetuitās; *verb* **perpetuāre**, continue
without stopping

aevum, period, age

aetās, age, lifetime

saeculum, age, lifetime, generation, century;
duōbus saeculis ante, 200 years before;
aliquot saeculis post, some centuries
later

compositiō annī, calendar

year

annus, year; integer a., complete y.; annō
interiectō, after a y.; annō vertente, in
the course of a year; intrā trēs annōs,
within three y.; multis post annis *or*
multis annis post, after many y.; priore
annō, in the previous y.; superior annus,
the previous y.

annuus, lasting a year, yearly

anniversārius, yearly

annōtinus, last year's

perennis, lasting a year

quotannīs, yearly, annually

biennium, space of two years; **triennium**, do.
of three; **quadriennium**, do. of four;

quīnquennium, do. of five

lūstrum, period of five years

mēnsis, month; *adj.* **mēnstruus**

bimēnstris, lasting two months

quandō? when

cum, quandō, ubi, ut, quō tempore, when

simulac, as soon as

quamdiū? quātenus? how long? **quamdiū**, as
long as

dum, whilst

intereā, interim, meanwhile

simul, at the same time

spatium, space of time; s. nanciscī, gain
time

tempus breve, short time

pūctum temporis, moment

mōmentō temporis, at the decisive moment

q.v. seasons, 11.1

day

diēs, day; in diēs singulōs, daily; diem
dicendō eximere, spend the day in talking;
diem sūmere ad Actg, choose a day for;
adj. **diurnus**, by d.

lūce, lūcī, interdiū, by day, in the daytime

bīduum, space of two days; **trīduum**, of three;

quadrīduum, of four; trīduō intermissō,
after an interval of three days; **hebdomas**,
seven days

hōra, hour

hōrae, clock; **sōlārium**, sundial, clock

antelūcānus, before dawn

dīlūcēscere, illūcēscere, dawn; *noun*
dīlūculum

lūcet, lūcēscit, it is dawning

prīmā lūce, ortō sōle, lūce ortā, at dawn,
sunrise

māne, morning; *adj.* **mātūtīnus**

ante merīdiem, in the forenoon; *adj.*
antemerīdiānus; **merīdiēs**, noon; **post**
merīdiem, dē merīdiē, in the afternoon;
adj. **postmerīdiānus**

crepusculum, dusk

vesper, vespera, evening; primō vespere *or*
primā vespere [hōrā], in first evening
hour; *adv.* **vesperī; pervesperī**, very late in
the evening; *adj.* **vespertīnus**; *verb*
vesperāscere

sōlis occāsū, at sunset

prīma fax, early torchlight (just after dark)

nox, night; sub noctem, towards nightfall;
primā nocte, at nightfall, early in the night;
nocte intermissā, n. having meanwhile
fallen; mediā nocte, at midnight; proximā

nocte, last n.; *multā nocte*, late at n.; *ad multam noctem*, far into n.; *adv. noctū*; *adj. nocturnus*, by n.; *pernoctāre*, spend the n.; *vigilia*, quarter of the n. (about three hours); *prima, secunda, tertia, quarta v.*

sērus, late, too late; *adv. sērō*, too late
hīs paucīs diēbus, a few days ago
nudiūs tertius, the day before yesterday
herī, yesterday; *adj. hesternus*
hodiē, to-day; *adj. hodiernus*
crās, to-morrow; *adj. crāstinus*
diēs crāstinus, the morrow (in the future); *diē posterō*, on the morrow (of a past date)
perendiē, on the day after to-morrow; *adj. perendinus*
diēs superior, the previous day
prīdiē, on the day before
postrīdie, posterō diē, on the day after, on the next day
post diem quīntum, after five days
cottīdiē, *adv. daily*; *adj. cottīdiānus*

1.2 before and after

ante (*prep. with Ac, adv.*); *adv. antea*, *antehāc*; *conj. antequam, priusquam*, before
prior, former, previous; *adv. prius*, before, sooner, previously
tempus prius or *superius*, former days; *superiōribus temporibus*, in earlier times
praeteritus, past; *praeterita, praeteritum tempus*, the past
prope est or in eō est ut subj., ... is on the point of happening.
post (*prep. with Ac, adv.*), after, afterwards; *adv. postea, posthāc*, afterwards, hereafter; *postquam*, after
haud ita multō post, postea aliquantō, brevī postea, nōn multō postea, a little later
posthāc, hereafter, henceforth
posterus, later, next, future
posteritās, the future
posterior, latter, later; *adv. posterius*
subinde, just after, then
aliquot post diēbus, some days after
ex intervāllō, after some time
futūrus, future
reliquum tempus, the future
porrō, in future
praesentire, have a presentiment, foresee; *noun praesēnsiō*; *praevidēre, prōspicere, prōvidēre*, foresee; *noun prōvisiō*

antecēdere, go before, precede; *noun antecessiō*
anticipāre, praecipere, praecurrere, anticipate; *noun anticipātiō*

1.3 first and last

prīmus, first; *adv. prīmō*, at first, *primum*, firstly
postrēmum, suprēmum, novissimus, last
postrēmō, lastly; *postrēmum, suprēmum*, for the last time
(ad) extrēmum, at last, finally
ultima tempora, earliest or latest times

q.v. beginning and end, 3.1, 3.3

1.4 always...never

quotiēns, how often; *totiēns*, so often
semper, numquam nōn, perpetuō, always, constantly
plērumque, ferē, generally, usually; *quod ferē fit*, as generally happens
vulgō, generally, commonly
saepe, persaepe, often; *saepissimē, saepenumerō* repeatedly, again and again
crēbrō, often (of a regular sequence)
trītus, common, commonplace, hackneyed
nōnnumquam, sometimes (fairly often)
interdum, quondam, subinde, identidem, occasionally, now and then, repeatedly
aliquandō, on certain occasions, sometimes (not often)
rārō, rarely
singulāris, rare, remarkable
semel et saepius, plūs quam semel, more than once
semel, once
umquam, ever; *numquam*, never; *nec umquam*, and never

q.v. custom, usual, unusual 49.1

1.5 already, still, not yet, at length

iam, by this time; *iam nunc, iam tum*, already
iamdūdum, iamprīdem, this long while
etiam, etiam tunc or nunc, adhūc, still
nōndum, neque adhūc, not yet
dēmum, aliquandō, at last; *dēnique*, at last, in short
tandem, at length

1.6 formerly, now, then

prīdem, long ago, of old, formerly
aliquandō, at some time (past, present or future)
quondam, once (past only, usually during some space of time)
ōlim, formerly, a long time ago, once (past or future)
abhinc quattuor annōs, four years ago; a. *tribus diēbus*, three days ago
mātūrē, early, in good time; **mātūrius**, earlier
nūper, **nōn** (*or haud*) **prīdem** (*or ita prīdem*), lately, recently
paulō ante, but lately
dūdum, a little while ago
ad hōc tempus, until now
nunc, iam, in praesentiā, now
tempus praesēns, present time; **in (tempus) praesēns**, for the present
commodum, just in time, at the very moment
īnstāns, present; **īstantia (P)**, the present situation
hīs temporibus, nostrā aetāte, in our time, in modern times, nowadays
īlicō, extemplō, prōtinus, statim, continuō, cōnfestim, sine morā, ē vestigiō, immediately, then and there, forthwith
mox, brevī, mātūrē, soon, presently
propediem, very soon
quam prīmum, as soon as possible
ante tempus, too soon
deinde, inde, exinde, tum, tunc, then
eā tempestāte, tum temporis, id temporis, at that time
tum dēmum, then and then only
aliquandō, hereafter

1.7 delay; until

mora, delay; *trīduī morā interpositā*, after a delay of three days; *nūllam moram interpōnere quīn subj.*, not lose a moment in; **morārī, cūctārī, tardāre, retardāre, distīnere**, make slow, delay, defer; *noun cūctātiō*; **morātor, cūctātor**, one who delays, **mūginārī**, hesitate, delay
differre, postpone; *noun dilātiō*
prōcrāstināre, prōtrūdere, sustentāre, put off, delay; *nouns prōcrāstinātiō, sustentātiō*
prōducere, propāgāre, prōrogāre, rēicere, protract, prolong; *nouns prōductiō, propāgātiō, prōrogātiō*

dubitāre, delay (*intrans.*); *noun dubitātiō*
dōnec, quoad, until
ūsque ad, until
ad hunc ūsque diem, up to this day
adhūc, thus far, hitherto
quoūsque (tandem), how much longer

1.8 again

rūrsus, again
īterum, for the second time
dēnuō, afresh, once more
integrāre, renew
īterāre, duplicāre, repeterē, repeat; *nouns iterātiō, repetītiō*
īterum atque īterum, semel īterumque, semel atque īterum, repeatedly
frequēns, repeated; **frequentāre**, do again, repeatedly
etiam atque etiam, again and again
retractāre, take up again
non postea or posthāc, not again

2.1 gradually, suddenly

paulātim, sēnsim, pedetemptim, gradātīm, little by little, by degrees
repente, subitō, suddenly; *adj. repentīnus*, sudden, unexpected
dēsubitō, quite suddenly

2.2 for a long or short time

in omne tempus, for ever
diū, long; *comp. diūtius, superl. diūtissimē; diūtīnus, diūturnus*, lasting, long, prolonged
iamprīdem, iamdūdum, now for a long time
longus, longinquus, tedious
aliquamdiū, aliquantum temporis, for some time
paulisper, for a little time
parumper, for a little while, for a moment

2.3 fast

celer, swift; *adv. celeriter; noun celeritās*
vēlōx, swift; *adv. vēlōciter; noun vēlōcitās*
pernīx, swift; *noun pernīcītās*
rapidus, citus, quick; *noun rapiditās; adv. cito*
volucer, swift, fleeting
cursim, raptim, quickly
praeceps, headlong, hasty

slow

tardus, slow; *noun tarditās*

lentus, slow, lingering, sluggish

q.v. make slow, delay, 1.7

accelerāre, festīnāre, properāre, hasten, make haste; *properātō opus est*, there is need of haste; *nouns festīnātiō, properātiō*; *adv. festīnātō*

2.4 old and young

senex (*usually noun*) old; old man; *comp. senior*, older; *noun senectūs*, old age; *adj. senīlis*

nātū grandis, old; **māior, māximus** (*with or without annīs or nātū*), older, oldest

quot annōs nātus es? how old are you?; *annōs XXX nātus sum or vixī*

aequālis, of the same age

iuvenis (*usually noun*), youthful; one in prime of life; *comp. iūnior*, younger; *noun iuventūs*, youth

nātū (or annīs) minor, minimus, younger, youngest

parvus, young, e.g. *parvī liberī*

q.v. ages of man, 24.2

2.5 old and new

vetus, old (still existing); *comp. vetustior*; *noun vetustās*; *verb inveterāscere*, grow old

antīquus, vetustus, old (no longer existing), ancient; **antīquitus** (*adv.*), in or from ancient times; *noun antīquitās*; *ultima a.*, extreme antiquity

obsolescere, grow old

prīscus, primitive, olden, old-fashioned

prīstinus, primitive, original

novus, new; *quid novī* what news? *noun novitās*

recēns, fresh, recent

novāre, renovāre, reficere, restituere, redintegrāre, instaurāre, make new, restore; *nouns renovātiō, restitūtiō, instaurātiō*

dē, ab or ex integrō, anew

2.6 opportunity, occasion

occāsiō, facultās, potestās, opportunity; *occāsiōnem or facultātem or potestātem dare, or potestātem facere, G gerund, give an o.*

locum or cōpiam dare G gerund or ad gerund, give an opportunity; *dare suspiciōnī locum*, give occasion for suspicion

locō or in locō, opportunely

tempus, right time, opportunity; **prīmō quōque tempore**, at the first opportunity; **suō tempore**, at a fitting time; **temporī or temperī**, at the right time

BEGINNING AND END

3.1 beginning

orīgō, fōns, source

auctor, originator

creāre, generāre, ingenerāre, gignere, create; *nouns creātor, generātor, genitor, creatiō (Deus) effector (mundī)*, creator (God)

ēdere, produce, bring forth

cōstruere, construct, make; *noun cōstrūctiō initium, prīncipium, exōrdium, prīmōrdium, exōrsus, inceptiō, introitus*, beginning; *adj. prīncipālis*, original

incipere, ōrdīrī, incohāre, exōrdīrī, begin

orīrī, coorīrī, exorīrī, existere, arise; *noun ortus*

coepisse, have begun

īstituere, institute, begin

suscipere, take up

cōnārī, attempt, undertake; *noun cōnātus experīrī*, try; *noun experientia*

3.2 growth

alere, rear

crēscere concrēscere, grow

recrēscere, grow again

flōrēre, flourish

3.3 end

cōficere, peragere, perficere, absolvere, complete

terminus, goal; **termināre**, end

dēcrēscere, decrease

pūtēscere, decay, rot; **pūtīdus**, rotten

abolere, comminuere, cōnfringere, cōsumere, delere, destruere, demoliri, diruere, disperdere, dissolvere, divellere, evellere, evertere, exstinguere, percellere, perdere, destroy

excidere or excindere or proruere (e.g. domos), destroy

dissolutio, eversio, exitium, extinctio, interitio, interitus, labes, naufragium, obitus, perniciēs, pestis, ruina, destruction, ruin; ad interitum ruere, rush to destruction; *adjs.* **exitiabilis, exitialis, exitiosus, pestifer, pestilens, perniciosus**

interire, perire, disperire, emori, intermori, perish, decay

ad nihilum venire or recidere, come to naught, perish

ruere, go to ruin; **ruinosus,** ruinous, in ruins

collabefieri, be brought to ruin

desinere, desistere, cease

deficere, come to an end

effluere, pass away, vanish

finis, end; *finem facere,* with *Dtg, Gtg or G gerund,* bring to an end; *finem statuere,* assign an end to, make an end of; *verb finire,* end

clausula, end (of letter), last sentence (of period), last verses (of play)

epistulam concludere, end a letter

exitus, conclusion

exitiosus, exitiabilis, disastrous, fatal, deadly

funus, destruction, end; e.g. *reipublicae*

occasus, downfall, ruin

BIRTH AND DEATH

3.4 birth

parere, give birth to; **partus,** birth; offspring

nasci, be born; **natalis,** natal; *diēs n., or n.,* birthday; *nātū,* by birth; *māior n.,* older; *māximus n.,* oldest

renasci, be born again

ingredi vitam, be born

vivere, live; **vita,** life; *introire in vitam,* enter on l.; *manere in vitā,* remain alive; *vitā frui,* enjoy life, live; **vivus,** alive;

mātre tuā vivā, in your mother's lifetime

reviviscere, live again, revive

animans, living being

3.5 growth

nūtrire, foster, rear; **nūtrix,** nurse

excidere ē pueris, pass out of childhood

adolēscere, grow up

consenēscere, grow old, weak

q.v. ages of man, 24.2

3.6 death

mors, obitus, discessus dē vitā, excessus (ē vitā), fātum, death; *m. eum absūpsit,* carried off; *mortem obiit,* he died; **mortalis,** subject to death; **moribundus,** dying; *noun mortālitas*

mortifer, deadly, causing death

mori, abire ē vitā, cursum vitae cōficere, obire, cedere vitā, decedere (also with dē vitā), discedere ē vitā, excidere vitā or ē vitā, ex or dē vitā exire or migrāre, vitā emigrāre, hinc demigrāre, perire, depere, occidere, occumbere (also with mortem or morte), animam agere or efflāre, animam or vitam edere, vitam amittere, desciscere ā vitā, expirāre, die; vitam abicere, surrender life; **vitam complere,** conclude life

sī quid mihi hūmanitus accidisset, if I were to die

mors voluntaria, suicide; **mortem or necem sibi cōsciscere, vitā sē privāre, sē interimere, ā vitā recedere,** commit suicide **sē suspendere,** hang oneself; **suspendium,** hanging

mortem oppetere, encounter death, die (a violent or unnatural death)

letum, violent death; *see 47.2*

extrēmus (or postrēmus) spiritus, dying breath

concidere, fall lifeless

in aciē cadere, fall in battle

vitae cursum cōficere, finish one's career

mortuus, defunctus, exsanguis, dead

inferi, the dead; *apud inferos,* among the dead

inferiae, sacrifices in honour of the dead; **parentare mortuis,** bring sacrifices to dead relations

iūsta, funeral ceremonies

mourning

vestem or vestitum mutare, go into mourning

ad vestitum suum redire, go out of mourning

sordēs P, mourning garment; mourning

toga sordida or pulla, dark grey toga, worn in mourning

lūgubris, mourning (*adj.*)

q.v. inheritance, 33.6

funeral

cadāver, dead body, corpse

lectus, bier

fūnus, funeral; *f.* dūcere, conduct a f.; in *f.* venīre, go to a f.; *adj.* **fūnebris**, e.g. cōntiō; **fūnebria**, funeral rites

exsequiae, funeral train, obsequies; *exsequiās* prōsequī, attend a funeral

efferre, carry to burial

cremāre, cremate; **cinis**, ashes

rogus, funeral pile

humāre, inter

sepelīre, inter, cremate; **sepultūra**, burial, funeral obsequies; *sepultūrā* afficere, bury

sepulcrum, **monumentum**, **bustum**, tomb, grave, burial place; *Acpn* in *sepulcrō* condere, inter

tumulus, sepulchral mound, barrow

urna, cinerary urn

ēlogium, epitaph

inhumātus, unburied

4-6 PLACE

4.1

īnfinītās, **immēnsūm**, unlimited space

orbis terrārum, **mundus**, **terrae**, **ūniversum**, world, universe; **mundānus**, citizen of the world

intermundia, space between worlds

deus artifex or **mōlītōr mundī**, God the creator of the world

ubi? where? *ubi gentium?*, where in the world?

ubi, **quā**, where; **quācumque**, **ubicumque**, wherever

hōc locō, **hīc**, here, in this place

illīc, **istīc**, **ibī**, **eō locō**, there, in that place

ibīdem, **eōdem locō**, in the same place

alibī, in another place

praestō (*adv.*) **sum**, am present, ready, at hand
domī militiaeque, at home and abroad
longē lātēque, far and wide
sēdēs, base, foundation
regiō, quarter, region
locus, place; (*n P loca*, region, locality)

ubīque, **undique**, **omnibus locīs**, **omnibus (in) partibus**, everywhere

ubivīs, **usquam**, **uspīam**, anywhere

alicubī, in some place

multīs locīs, **multifāriam**, in many places

passim, at different places

nusquam, in no place, nowhere

septentriōnēs, (*m P*), north

merīdiēs, south

occidēs, (**sōlis**) **occāsus**, west

oriēs, (**sōlis**) **ortus**, east

spectat in merīdiem, it faces south

vergit in occidentem, it lies to the west

4.2 be at rest

stāre, stand; **statiō**, stay, sojourn; **status**, posture, position; **stabilis**, firm, steady; *noun* **stabilitās**

assistere, take up a position, stand

cōnsistere, take one's stand, halt

resistere, stand still

cōnstāre, remain; **cōnstitī**, stand

īnstāre, stand in

restāre, stand firm

sistere, **subsistere**, stand still, stop

sedēre, sit; *noun* **sessiō**

obsidēre, sit in or at

cause to be at rest

sistere, **statuere**, set up

pōnere, **locāre**, **collocāre**, place; *noun* **collocātiō**

stabilire, fix, establish

iacere, **iactāre**, throw; *noun* **iactātiō**

sternere, stretch flat

suspendere, hang up

subsīdere, stay

iacēre, **cubāre**, lie

humī strātus or **fūsus**, lying (flat) on the ground

supīnus, lying on one's back

pronus, lying face downward

pendere, hang, be suspended

4.3 stay

versārī, dwell, stay, abide

manēre, remain; *noun* **mānsiō**

permanēre, **perstāre**, **persevērāre**,

remanēre, stay to the end, endure, remain;

nouns **permānsiō**, **remānsiō**, **persevērantia**

residēre, remain, be left

eōdem remanēre vestigiō, stay in the same place

restāre, **superesse**, be left, remain over

reliquus, **residuus**, left over; **reliquum**,

residuum, **pars reliqua**, the rest

cōram *Ab*, in the presence of

leave

sē locō movēre, leave

relinquere, leave behind; *noun* **relictio**

linquere, leave

dērelinquere, abandon (neglect); *noun* **dērelictio**

dēserere, desert; *noun* **dēsertor**

dēstituere, abandon (in destitution)

discēdere ab *Ab*, forsake, leave (person); *noun* **discessus**

excēdere *Ab* or *ex Ab*, leave (place)

q.v. other verbs in 5.1

4.4 go

īre, go; *noun* **itiō**

commeāre, go in and out, to and fro

sē cōferre, betake oneself, go

tendere, go, march, travel

pergere, proceed, go on

sē in viam dare, set out

gradīrī, **ingredī**, walk, step out

gradus, **passus**, step; **ingressus**, walking;

gradātim, step by step

tītubāre, reel, stumble

vacillāre, sway, stagger, reel

lābī, **illābī**, slip; *noun* **lāpsus**

ambulāre, walk (at leisure)

baculum, walking-stick

inambulāre, **spatiārī**, take a walk; *noun* **inambulatio**

vādere, walk (briskly)

vehī, be conveyed; **currū** *v.*, drive; in **equō** *v.*, ride; in **nāvī** *v.*, sail

currere, run; *nouns* **cursum**, running, voyage; **currus**, car, chariot

proficiscī, set out, travel; **pedibus** *p.*, set out on a land journey; **profectiō**, departure

iter facere, go on a journey

viam ingredī, take a road

cursum tenēre, hold on a course; **cursum dirigere ad** *Ac*, make for

errāre, **vagārī**, **pervagārī**, wander, roam, rove about; **vagus**, wandering about

peragrāre, wander or travel through; *noun* **peragratio**

make to go

ciere, **movēre**, **commovēre**, move; **permovēre**, move (thoroughly); *nouns* **mōtus**, **mōmentum**; *adj.* **mōbilis**

dūcere, **perdūcere**, lead, conduct

dīrigere, direct

mittere, send; *noun* **missiō**

ferre, **portāre**, carry

trahere, draw, drag; *noun* **tractus**

intorquēre, hurl

incēdere, walk (with dignity); **incessus**, walking, gait

prōsequī *Ac* *pn*, accompany

contendere, **festīnāre**, **mātūrāre**, **properāre**, **approperāre**, hasten; *noun* **ruere**, rush

vehere, transport, convey

ferrī, travel

obīre *Ac*, traverse, travel through, visit

perlustrāre *Ac*, travel over

peregrīnārī, travel, go abroad; **peregrīnatio**, travel or stay in foreign country

migrāre, **dēmigrāre ex** *Ab* **in** *Ac*, migrate; *noun* **migratio**

viātor, traveller

viaticum, money for journey

q.v. transport by land, see 7.6

q.v. by water, see 9.3, .4

4.5 turn, bend, roll, fold

vertere, turn (*trans.*); **vertī**, turn (*intrans.*);
versārī, turn often, twist about; **invertere**,
turn round
flectere, bend, turn; **flexus**, turning, turning
point; **flexiō**, bending; **flexibilis**, flexible;
flexuōsus, winding; **inflectere**, bend; *noun*
inflexiō; **reflectere**, bend or turn back
intendere, bend, turn
torquēre, twist, turn, bend; **tortuōsus**, twisted;
obtorquēre, twist, wrench; **retorquēre**,
twist back
inclināre, bend, incline, turn; *noun* **inclinātiō**
volvere, turn round, roll (*trans.*); **volvī**, roll
(*intrans.*); **volūtāre**, roll, twist; **volūbilis**,
turning, rolling
revolvere, roll back, unroll
plicāre, fold
explicāre, **replicāre**, **pandere**, unfold

5.1 towards/away from

towards

quō? or **quōrsum?** whither?
utrō? to which side, whither?
hūc, to this place
illūc, **istūc**, **eō**, to that place
eōdem, to the same place
aliquō, to some place
nusquam, to no place
passim, **in omnēs partēs**, in all directions
quō, to which place
quōcumque, **quōquō**, whithersoever
ad Ac, to
sub Ac, to
ūsque ad Ac, (all the way) to
adversus, **versus Ac**, towards
venīre, come
ventitāre, come often
advenīre, **pervenīre**, arrive; *noun* **adventus**;
prīmō adventū, immediately on arrival
prōvinciam tetigit, he reached the province
accēdere, **succēdere**, **appropinquāre**, **adīre**,
subīre, approach; *nouns* **accessiō**, **accessus**,
successus, **aditus**; *aditum Dpn ad Actg*
interclūdere, bar one's way to; *omnēs*
aditūs Gtg praeclūdere, *saepīre*, bar all
approaches to
obrēpere, creep up, draw near
adventāre, approach, advance (espec. of
hostile forces)
advehī, come (ride, sail, etc.) to
adnāre, swim to
allābī, glide to

arrēpere, creep up
īnstāre, approach; *vēr īnstat*, spring is near
rēctō itinere petere, make straight for
tendere (e.g. *Venusiam*), make for
incidere in Ac, come upon, meet unexpectedly
accurrere, **occurrere**, run up
advolāre, rush up
assilīre, jump to
īnferri, rush against
admovēre, bring, lead to; *noun* **admōtiō**
appellere, **adigere**, drive towards or up; *noun*
adāctiō
apportāre, carry to or up
addūcere, lead to or up
afferre, bring to or up
advehere, convey to
advertere, turn towards; *oculōs ad eum a.*,
turn one's eyes towards him
obicere, throw against, in the way
offendere, knock against; come upon
obviam īre or **prōcēdere Dpn** or **prōdīre**, go
to meet

away from

unde? whence?
hinc, from this place
illinc, **istinc**, **istim**, **inde**, from that place
indidem, from the same place
alicunde, from some place
ex intervāllō, from some distance
undique, **ex omnibus partibus**, from all sides
extrīnsecus, **forīs**, from the outside
unde, from which place
ā, **ab Ab**, from; N.B. *abs tē*
abstinēre, keep away
abīre, **dēvehī**, go away; *noun* **abitus**
exīre, **absistere**, depart (from); *noun* **exitus**
cēdere, **sēcēdere**, withdraw; *noun* **sēcēssiō**
abscēdere, **dēcēdere ab**, **dē** or **ex Ab**,
discēdere ab Abpn, **excēdere ex Ab place**,
dīgredī ab Ab, leave, depart from; *longius*
discēdere, go farther away; *nouns*
abscēssus, **dēcēssiō**, **discēssus**, **dīgressiō**,
dīgressus
ēgredī, quit; *noun* **ēgressus**
dēgredī, go away
āvertere, **āversārī**, **dēclināre**, **dēvertere**, turn
away or aside; *noun* **dēclinātiō**
aufugere, run away, abscond
āvolāre, **dēvolāre**, fly away
diffluere, flow away
ēlābī, slip away
exclūdere, keep away, remove
dēpellere, push aside, remove
abiungere, separate, remove

abigere, expellere, extrūdere, exturbāre, prōturbāre, drive away; *nouns* **expulsiō, expulsor**
ablēgāre, relēgāre, send away; *noun* **ablēgatiō**
āmovēre, dēmovēre, dīmovēre, removēre, retrahere, sēmovēre, submovēre, remove; *nouns* **āmōtiō, remōtiō**
abdere, dēpōnere, put away
trahere, draw away; *noun* **tractus**
arcēre, prevent from approaching, keep at a distance
abdūcere, dēdūcere, ēdūcere, lead away; *noun* **dēductiō**
asportāre, dēportāre, dēvehere, bring or carry away
abstrahere, dētrahere, distrahere, subtrahere, draw or take away; *noun* **dētractiō**
dēmere, take away
aufferre, āvehere, carry off
adimere, ēripere, take away; *nouns* **adēemptiō, ēreptiō**
surripere, take away secretly
revellere, tear away
succīdere, cut off
abrādere, scrape off
dētrūdere, thrust away
āvocāre, sēvocāre, call of from, withdraw, divert; *noun* **āvocatiō**
mittere, dīmittere, dismiss; *nouns* **missiō, dīmissiō**
abicere, prōicere, throw away
āvellere, abripere, dēripere, abrumpere, eximere, abscindere, tear away, break off; *noun* **abruptiō**
praeripere, tear or snatch away
abscīdere, dēcīdere, dēsecāre, resecāre, cut off
abluere, dīluere, ēluere, wash away, remove
abstergēre, wipe away

5.2 in/out

in
in *Ab*, in
intrā *Ac*, in
intus (*adv.*), **intrīnsecus, intrōrsum** or **-us**, within
penitus, inwardly, internally, far within
domī, in the house
internus (*late*), internal
interior, on the inner side
intimus, inmost
inse, be in

inhaerēre, be inherent
īnsidēre, sit in, adhere to
īnsitus, inborn, inherent

out

extrā *Ac*, without, on the outside of
extrā (*adv.*), without
forīs, out of doors
externus, outward
exterior, on the outer side
extrēmus, outermost
exstāre, stand out
prōspicere, prōspectāre, look out; *noun* **prōspectus**

5.3 into/out of

into

in *Ac*, into
intrō (*adv.*), **intrōrsum** or **-us**, in, to the inside
inīre, introīre, intrāre *Ac* or **in** *Ac*, **ingredi** *Ac*, **immigrāre, invādere**, enter (*trans.*); also *intrans.*; **introitus, ingressiō, ingressus**, entrance
intrōspicere, look into
penetrāre, permānāre, sē īnsinuāre, get into
incidere, fall into
incurrere in *Ac*, run into
īnscendere, climb into
irreperere, creep or steal in
īnsilīre, īnsultāre, leap in
irrupere, irruere, rush into; *noun* **irruptiō**
involāre, fly or rush into
īnfluere, flow into
invehī, ride, drive, etc., into; *noun* **investiō**
īnserere, impōnere, inculcāre, interpōnere, put into, insert, introduce; *noun* **interpositiō**
indūcere, intrōdūcere, lead into; *nouns* **inductiō, intrōductiō**
īnferre, ingerere, invehere, carry into; *noun* **investiō**
inicere, throw into
importāre, import
involvere, wrap up; **involūcrum**, wrapper, covering
īnflāre, blow into; *noun* **īnflātus**
īnfundere in *Ac*, pour into
īnfigere, fasten in, thrust in
imprimere, press into
incīdere, cut into
īnsinuāre, thrust into
intexere, weave into
immittere, send, cast into

out of

ē, ex *Ab*, out of
forās (*adv.*), to the outside, out of doors
exīre, go out; *noun* **exitus**
ēgredī, go out; *noun* **ēgressus**
ēmergere, exorīrī, rise, come forth
ēvādere, come out or forth
ēminēre, stand out
excidere, fall out
excurrere, run out or forth; *noun* **excursus**
exsilire, prōsilire, leap out
ērumpere, sally or burst forth; *noun* **ēruptiō**
ēvolāre, fly out, break forth
prōrumpere, break forth
ēvehī, ride, etc., out
effluere, ēmānāre, prōfluere, flow out
extrahere, prōtrahere, draw out
ēlicere, draw or entice out
ēruere, pluck out
ēducere, ēgerere, ēvehere, lead forth
efferre, prōmere, bring out, bring forth
ēripere, exceptāre, take out
vellere, pull out
ēvolvere, unroll; *noun* **ēvolūtiō**
explicāre, unfold
exprimere, press out
fundere, diffundere, effundere, prōfundere,
pour out; *nouns* **fūsiō, effūsiō**
offundere, perfundere, pour over
excutere, shake out
exclūdere, shut out
prōripere, drag or snatch out
pellere, expellere, exigere, ēicere, extrūdere,
exturbāre, drive out; *nouns* **expulsiō,**
expulsor, exāctiō, ēiectiō
prōtrūdere, thrust out
ēverrere, sweep out
ēvellere, excerpere, revellere, pluck out; *noun*
ēvulsiō
extorquēre, wrench out
excīdere, exsecāre, cut out
ēdere, ēmittere, send forth; *noun* **ēmissiō**
ēvomere, spit or cast out

5.4 up and high/down and low

up and high

suprā *Ac*, **super** *Ab*, above, over
suprā (*adv.*), above
īnsuper, on top, from above
dēsuper, from above
sursum or **s. versus**, upwards
altus, high (*also* deep); *noun* **altitūdō**
celsus, excelsus, sublīmis, ēditus, high, lofty
prōcērus, tall, high; *noun* **prōcēritās**

arduus, high, steep
superus, above, upper, higher
superior, higher
summus, (*poetic*) **suprēmus**, highest; *summus*
mōns, the top of the mountain
culmen, summit
vertex, top
summus locus, highest point
īnsistere, stand on
surgere, assurgere, cōsurgere, exurgere,
rise, get up
suspicere, look up; *noun* **suspectus**
scandere, ascendere, cōscendere,
ēscendere, cōnīrī, ascend, climb; *noun*
ascēnsus, cōscēnsiō
salire, jump; *noun* **saltus**
exsilire, exsultāre, prōsilire, leap up
sublīme ferrī, fly up
tollere, attollere, extollere, levāre, sublevāre,
raise, lift up
ērigere, set up
subvehere, carry or take up (stream)

down and low

īnrā *Ac*, **subter** *Ac*, **sub** *Ac*, below, under
īnrā, subter (*adv.*), below
deorsum, downwards
humilis, low; *noun* **humilitās**
prōclīvis, descending, downhill
praeceps, steep, precipitous
profundus, deep; *noun* **profundum**
īnferus, lower
īnferior, lower (of two)
īnfirmus, īmus, lowest; *sub* **īnfimō colle**, at
the foot of the hill
fundus, bottom
recumbere, lie down
dēpendere, prōpendere, hang down
dēvehī, go down
dēsīdere, sink down
cōnsīdere, sink, subside
cadere, dēcidere, fall; *noun* **cāsus**
prōcumbere, fall to the ground
dēlābī, prōlābī, slip down, fall; *noun*
prōlāpsiō
concidere, fall down
dēscendere, climb down; *noun* **dēscēnsus**
dēfluere, flow, swim or glide down
salire dē *Ab*, **dēsīlire**, leap down
ruere, rush down, tumble
dēcurre, run or flow down; *noun* **dēcursus**
dēvolāre, fly or hasten down
dēvolvī, rush down
sē praecipitāre, throw oneself down

dēmittere, drop; *sē manibus d.*, let oneself down; *noun dēmissiō*
dēferre, dēducere, dēportāre, bring down
dēvehere, carry down
pōnere, dēpōnere, put down
affligere, abicere, dēicere, dēturbāre, throw down; *Acpn praecipitem dēicere or praecipitāre*, cast down headlong
premere, suppressere, press down
dētrūdere, thrust down
sternere, fell, knock down
dēvolvere, roll down
dēmergere, immergere, sink, plunge (*trans.*)
succidere, cut down

5.5 through/across

through

per Ac, through
pervius, what can be passed through
pervādere, go through
percurrere, run through
perequitāre, ride through
pervehī, ride, sail, etc., through
pervolāre, fly or hasten through
trāns- (or trā-)-nāre or -natāre, swim through or across
perfringere, perrumpere, break through
intercidere, succidere, cut through
perferre, pervehere, carry through
perlūcere, shine through
perspicere, see through

q.v. pierce, 48.8

across

trāns Ac, across
trānsversus, lying across
trānsire, go across
trānsgridī, trāicere, cross (a river), *also* make to cross, e.g. *exercitum flūmen trāiēcit*;
trāngressus, trāiectus, trāiectiō, crossing, passage
trānscondere, cross (a mountain, etc.)
trānscurrere, run across
trānsilire, leap across
trā(ns)ferre, trānsportāre, trānsvehere, carry across; *noun trālātiō, trānsvectiō*
trādūcere, lead, bring or carry across
trānsmittere, send across; *noun trānsmissiō*

5.6 between

inter Ac, between

intervāllum, space between
interesse, be or lie between
intercidere, fall between
intericere, throw between; *noun interiectus*
interpōnere, place between, insert; *noun interpositiō*
intermittere, allow to intervene; *noun intermissiō*

5.7 side

latus, side, flank; *ā latere, ā lateribus*, on or at the side(s), on the flank(s)
dextra, right side; **sinistra, laeva**, left side
dextrā (laevā), on the right (left)
dextrōrsum (sinistrōrsum, ad laevam), to the right (left)
utrimque, on *or* from both sides
ex omnibus partibus, from all sides
ultrō citrōque, on this side and on that, to and fro
ab alterā parte...ab alterā, on one side...on the other
ūnā ex parte, from one side
obliquus, sidelong, slanting; **obliquē**, sideways
cis Ac, citrā Ac, on this side of
citrā, citrō adv., on this side
citerior adj., nearer, on this side
praeter Ac, past
praeterire, praetergridī, pass by
praetervehī, drive, ride or sail by; *noun praetervectiō*
trāns Ac, ultrā Ac, on the farther side of
ultrā, ultrō, ulterius adv., beyond
ulterior adj., beyond, farther, on the other side

5.8 opposite

contrā Ac, opposite
ē regiōne G or D, ex adversō G or D, contrā (adv.), opposite
adversus, contrārius, opposite; *in contrāriās partēs*, in opposite directions
oppōnere, set opposite; *noun oppositus*

5.9 on, over/under

on, over

super Ac Ab, over; *also adv.*
nītor, rest on, lean on
subnīsus or subnīxus, resting on
trānsgridī, go over; *noun trāngressiō*
trānscondere, step over
trānsilire, leap over

superfluere, run over, overflow
superfundī, overflow
superpōnere, put on
trādūcere, lead, bring or carry over
trāicere, throw over
suffundere, **superfundere**, pour over
imminēre, **impendēre**, **prominēre**, overhang

under

sub *Ac*, (to) under; *Ab*, under
subesse, be under
subīre, **succēdere**, go under
surrēpere, creep under
subdere, **submittere**, put under
subscrībēre, write below; *noun* **subscrīptiō**
subdūcere, **subtrahere**, draw from under
suppōnere, put under
subigere, bring under
subicere, bring or throw under
suggerere, lay under
substernere, spread or lay under
submergere, dip under, submerge
suffundere, pour under
subruere, **suffōdere**, undermine

6.1 near/far

near

quoad? quātenus? quoūque? how far?
spatium, **intervāllum**, **discrīmen**, distance
distāre, be distant
passus, pace
prope *Ac*, near; *also adv.*, e.g. *prope absum*,
am not far away
apud *Ac*, (quite) near
comminus, *adv.*, near
adesse, be near, close at hand
ante pedēs positum esse, stare in the face
adstāre, stand at or near
adhaerēre, keep close to; *noun* **adhaesiō**
iuxtā *Ac*, **propter** *Ac*, close to, hard by
propter, **iuxtā**, *adv.*, near
propinquus, near; *noun* **propinquitās**;
propior, nearer; **proximus**, nearest
subicere, bring or throw near
continēns, **appositus**, **subiectus**, **cōnfinis**,
lying near, adjacent
vīcīnus, neighbouring; *nouns* **vīcīnitās**, **vīcīnia**
subesse, be near
accolere, live near; **accola**, neighbour
suppetere, be at hand, be present
haerēre, cling, adhere
ad manum habēre, have at hand

far

procul ā or **ab** *Ab*, far from
procul, **ēminus**, *adv.*, at a distance
abesse, be absent; *longē a.*, be far away
ē longinquō, from afar
longinquus, distant
ultimus, farthest, very remote
remōtus, remote

q.v. words meaning approach and depart, 5.1

6.2 before/behind

before, in front and forward

prō *Ab*, in front of
ante *Ac*, before
prae *Ab*, in front of, ahead of
ante *adv.*, before
prōtinus, forward
frōns, front; *ā fronte*, in front, before
prōnus, leaning forward
adversus, in front; e.g. *adversum vulnus*;
adversōs aggressus est, attacked them in
front
praēire, **praecēdere**, **praegredī**, go in front;
noun **praegressiō**
praecurrere, run before, precede; *nouns*
praecursiō, **praecursor**
praedūcere, take or draw in front
praeferre, carry in front
praefigere, fasten in front
praemittere, send in advance
praepōnere, set before; *noun* **praepositio**
praerumpere, break off in front
praescāre, cut off in front
prōcēdere, **prōgredī**, **prōdire**, advance, come
forward; *nouns* **prōcessiō**, **prōgressiō**,
prōgressus
prōcumbere, fall forward
prōcurrere, run forward; *noun* **prōcursor**
prōvehī, advance (esp. of riding or sailing)
succēdere, move forward (*intrans.*)
exsistere, come forward
prōdere, go forth
prōruere, rush forward
sē prōripere, burst forth
prōmovēre, move forward (*trans.*)
prōdūcere, lead forward
prōferre, bring forward
impellere, **prōpellere**, drive forward, urge on;
noun **impulsiō**
prōtrūdere, thrust forward
trūdere, **pellere**, push

obstāre, stand before
obsistere, place oneself before
obducere, lead or draw before
obicere, throw before; *noun* **obicetus**
praevertere, put before
obstruere, erect in front; *noun* **obstrūctiō**
obtendere, draw in front of
oppōnere, set before

behind and backward, back

post *Ac*, **pōne** *Ac*, behind
post, **pōne**, *adv.*, behind
retrō, back
retrōsum, **rursum**, backwards
tergum, back, rear; *ā tergō*, (from) behind, at the back
āversus, behind; *āversōs aggressus est*, he attacked them from behind
sequī, follow
subsequī, follow up
succedere, succeed; *noun* **successor**
cedere, **recedere**, **retractāre**, **sē subducere** *refl.*, withdraw, retire; *noun* **recessus**
revehī, drive, sail, etc., back
recurrere, run or hasten back
redire, **regredi**, **revenire**, **reverti**, come back, return; *nouns* **reditus**, **regressus**, **reversio**, return; *reditū intercludi*, be prevented from returning
remigrāre, wander back, return
redux, returning
recidere, fall back
resilire, leap back, rebound
repōnere, put back
revehere, bring back
retrahere, draw or drag back
reducere, **redigere**, lead back; *noun* **reductiō**
referre, **reportāre**, carry back
pellere, **repellere**, **refūtāre**, drive back
revolvere, roll back
rēicere, throw back
repercutere, cast back
refundere, pour back
remittere, send back; *noun* **remissio**
retinere, **retentāre**, **refrēnāre**, **supprimere**, hold back; *noun* **retentiō**
restringere, **revincire**, bind back

6.3 together/apart

together

cum *Ab*, with
simul, **ūnā**, *adv.* together, at the same place
congrēdi, **convenire**, **occurrere**, meet; *nouns* **congressiō**, **congressus**, **occurus**

concurrere, assemble; *noun* **concurus**
legere, **colligere**, gather, collect; *noun* **collēctiō**
conducere, **cōnferre**, **cōnstruere**, bring together; *noun* **collātiō**, **cōnstrūctiō**
cōgere, bring together (by force)
cōnfligere, strike together; *noun* **cōnflīctus**
congregāre, **comportāre**, bring together
conicere, throw or bring together
cōnficere, get together
continere, hold together
contrahere, draw together; *noun* **contractiō**
compōnere, place together, join; *noun* **compositiō**
stringere, bind together
adnectere, **cōnsociāre**, connect
cōnfigere, fasten together
iungere, **coniungere**, **cōnserere**, **serere**, **coāgmentāre**, join; *nouns* **iūnctiō**, **coniūnctiō**; **coāgmentum**, joint
colligāre, **nectere**, **cōnectere**, **innectere**, **cōpulāre**, bind together, combine; *nouns* **nexus**, **cōpulātiō**
sociāre, **cōnsociāre**, combine, associate; *noun* **societās**
contexere, interweave, connect
miscere, **commiscere**, **immiscere**, **permiscere**, combine
admiscere, admix
cōfundere, pour together, combine; *noun* **cōnfusiō**
immisceri *D*, or **sē immiscere**, mingle with (*intrans.*)
intexere, join together
iūnctus, united, combined
cōire, combine, be joined
nōdus, bond

apart

hiātus, cleft, opening, fissure
lacūna, cavity, cleft
rīma, crack, slit, crevice
sēparātim, *less often seorsum*, *adv.*, apart
distinere, keep apart
dilābi, **diffugere**, scatter, disperse (*intrans.*)
spargere, **aspergere**, scatter, sprinkle; *sē s.* or *spargi*, scatter (*intrans.*); *noun* **aspersiō**
cōnspargere, **īnspargere**, **respergere**, strew, sprinkle
dispergere, scatter about, disperse; *noun* **dispersus**
cōnsternere, strew
differre, **diffundere**, **dispellere**, **dissipāre**, scatter; *noun* **dissipātiō**
perfundere, sprinkle

disicere, scatter (enemies)
findere, diffindere, scindere, discindere, interscindere, discernere, divellere, cleave, tear, rend asunder; *noun fissiō*
dūdūcere, dīvidere, dīmōvēre, dirimere, disiungere, disparāre, distīnere, sēiungere, sēcernere, sēclūdere, sēgregāre, sēparāre, separate; *nouns dīductiō, dīvisiō, dirēemptus, disiūnctiō, sēiūnctiō, sēcretiō, sēparātiō*
dissolvere, loosen, separate; *noun dissolutiō*
dīrumpere, break asunder, sever
dīripere, tear asunder; *noun dīreptiō*
sēparātus, separate (*adj.*)

q.v. divide, distribute, 17.6

ligāre, alligāre, obligāre, bind
illigāre, tie, knit, fasten together
dēligāre, bind fast
religāre, bind back, bind
astringere, draw together, bind
restringere, bind back or fast
vincīre, bind
dēvincīre, bind fast
ēvincīre, bind round
revincīre, bind back
innectere, bind, fasten round

q.v. whole, part, 17.6

6.4 around and middle

circum, circā *Ac.*, around
circum, circā, *adv.*, around
circumiectus, surrounding
circumscribere, enclose (in a circle);
circumscriptiō, circle, outline
cingere, circumplectī, surround; *gladiō cingitur*, he girds on his sword
circumsistere, circumstāre, stand round
circumīre, go, march around; *noun circuitus*
circumclūdere, circumvenīre, surround, encompass
circumvehī, ride or sail round; *noun circumvectiō*
circumequitāre, ride round
circumdare, place round, surround; *c. bracchia collō*, embrace
circumdūcere, lead around
circumagere, drive round

circumferre, carry round
circumicere, throw round; *noun circumiectus*
circumfundere, pour round
circumflāre, blow round
ambīre, go round, surround; *noun ambitus*
circumfluere, flow round
circumspicere, circumspectāre, look round; *noun circumspectus*

q.v. in, 5.2

q.v. circle etc. in 12.1

medius, middle; in *mediō mundō*, in the centre of the universe; *media pars*, centre

7 LAND

7.1

patria, (native) country
solum, terra, country, region
finis, boundary; **finēs** *P.*, territory, frontier; *fīnibus ūtī*, stay in one's country
cōnfinis, adjoining, neighbouring; *noun cōnfinium*, boundary
agrī nostrī, our land
indigena, native
barbaria *or barbariēs*, foreign country; **barbarus**, foreign, barbarian, *as noun* foreigner
prōvincia, province; **prōvinciālēs**, provincials
prōcōnsul, governor
cohors, staff, retinue
colōnia, settlement; *colōniam collocāre, dēdūcere*, found, plant a colony
colōnus, colonist
regiō, tractus, district
situs, lying, situated; **situs**, situation, site

7.2 country

rūs, country (not town)
rūsticus, rūsticānus, rural
ager, territory, district, domain, field; in *agrīs habitāre*, live in the country
agrestis, of the country, rustic
campus, field
prātum, meadow; *adj. prātēnsis*

7.3 hill and dale

mōns, mountain; *summus m.*, the top of the m.;
īmus m., the foot of the m.; *sub monte*, at
the foot of the m.; *sub ipsīs rādicibus*
montis, at the very foot of the m.;
montuōsus, **montānus**, mountainous
iugum, ridge
prōmunturium, headland, promontory
collis, hill; *adversō colle*, up the hill
tumulus, mound, hillock
agger, mound
mōlēs, mound, mole, massive pile
saxum, rock
scopulus, rock, crag; *adj. scopulōsus*
rūpēs, steep rock
cautēs, **cōtēs**, pointed rock
antrum, **caverna**, **spēlunca**, **specus**, cavern,
grotto
vallis, valley
convallis, enclosed valley
angustiae, **faucēs**, **saltus**, narrow pass, defile
vorāgō, abyss, chasm
scrobis, ditch
arduus, steep, lofty
sublīmis, **ēminēs**, lofty
praeceps, steep, headlong
circumcīsus, steep, sheer
praeruptus, **abruptus**, **abscīsus**, steep, rugged
apex, crest, peak
fastīgium, summit; slope, descent
dēvexus, sloping, steep
clīvus, slope, ascent
acclīvis, uphill, ascending; *noun acclivitās*
locus ēditus, rising ground; *locā ēdita*,
uplands
dēclīvis, **prōclīvis**, sloping down, downhill
ex locō superiōre (īnferiōre), from higher
(lower) ground
dēmissus, **dēpressus**, **humilis**, low-lying
ascendere, **scandere**, climb
attingere, reach
dēscendere, climb down
locā aspera, uneven ground
plānus, **aequus**, **campester**, level
aequus locus, **aequum**, **plānum**, **plānitēs**,
campus, plain

7.4 earth

terra, earth; *t. continēns*, mainland,
continent; *adjs. terrēnus*, **terrestris**
terrae mōtus, earthquake; **terrae lābēs** *or*
lāpsus, landslide
tellūs, earth

humus, ground; *humī*, on the ground
solum, ground
harēna, sand
pulvis, dust; **pulverulentus**, *poet. pulvereus*,
dusty
lutum, mud, clay; *adjs. luteus*, **lutulentus**
lapis, stone
asprētum, stony place
saxētum, rocky region
silex, stone, pebble, flint
glārea, gravel; *adj. glāreōsus*
glēba, lump of earth, clod
tesca (P), wastes, steppes

7.5

īnsula, island; **īnsulānus**, islander
palūs, **stāgnum**, marsh, swamp, pool, fen; *adj.*
palūster, *poet. palūdōsus*

7.6 transport by land

via, road; *mūnīre viam*, make a r.; *viam*
sternere, pave a r.; *mūnitiō viārum*, road
building; *v. fert*, the r. leads; *viam*
ingredī, *īstituere*, take a r.
viae transversae, cross-street
compitum, crossroads
trivium, crossroads
trāmes, **sēmita**, bypath, footpath, lane
callis, (stony, uneven) path, mountain path,
cattle track

vehiculum, **raeda**, (four-wheeled) carriage;
carpentum, (two-wheeled) carriage
raedārius, **aurīga**, coachman
currus, chariot; *currū vehī*, drive
essedum, war chariot of Gauls and Britons;
later, travelling carriage
plaustrum, wagon, lorry
carrus, cart (two-wheeled)
cisium, light two-wheeled vehicle
rota, wheel; **axis**, axle-tree
orbita, track (of wheels)
habēnae, reins; **lōra**, reins, whip
frēnum, bridle; *frēnōs dare*, give reins to;
verb frēnāre
lectīca, litter, palanquin; *lectīca octaphora*,
or octaphoron, litter carried by eight
ferculum, bier, litter
sella, sedan chair

iter, journey; *sē itinerī committere*, iter
instituire, set out on a journey; *i.*
habēre ad, make one's way to

impeditus (e.g. *locus*), difficult of passage

inuius, impassable, pathless

obsaepire, render impassable

dēsertus, desolate

dēverticulum, iter dēvium, bypath, byway

limes, cross-path

oblīquō itinere, by a side road

via compendiāria, short cut

circuitus, ānfractus, round-about way

dē viā dēflectere, stray from the road

in equō vehī, equitāre, ride

equum cōnsendere, mount horse; **equō**

dēscendere, dismount

equō citātō, concitātō or admissō, at full
gallop

calcar, spur; *equō calcāria subdere*,
equum calcāribus concitāre, spur on

q.v. travel, 4.4

q.v. transport by water, 9.3, 9.4

8 FARMING

agrī cultūra, arātiō, agriculture

opera rūstica, farm work, agriculture

praedium, farm

fundus, rūs, farm, country estate

vīlla, country house, farm; *diminutive vīllula*

familia rūstica, farm hands

vīlicus, bailiff, overseer

8.1

colere, cultivate; *nouns cultor terrae*, farmer;
cultus, tilling

agricola, colōnus, husbandman, farmer,
peasant

agrestis, peasant, farmer

rūsticus, rūsticānus, peasant

ager, seges, field

iūgerum, (2/3 English) acre

fertilis, pinguis, ūber, ferāx, frūgibus fētus,
opīmus, fēcundus, fertile; *nouns fertilitās*,
ūbertās, fēcunditās

sterilis, barren; *noun sterilitās*

macer, meagre, lean

āridus, dry

arātrum, plough; **vōmer**, ploughshare;

dentālia, sharebeam; *verb arāre, exarāre*;

arātor, bubulcus, ploughman, farmer

armenta P, cattle for ploughing, herd; **iugum**,
yoke (of oxen), team; **stimulus**, goad

arvum, ploughed land

sulcus, furrow

occāre, harrow

rāstrum, rake, mattock

dolābra, mattock, pickaxe

8.2

serere, obserere, sow, plant; **sator**, sower

sēmen, seed; *s. spargere*, sow seed

grānum, grain, seed

messis, harvest; *messem facere*, reap; **metere**,

dēmetere, mow, reap; **messor**, reaper

seges, crop

annōna, yearly produce (of grain)

trīticum, wheat; **avēna**, oats; **hordeum**, barley

spīca, spīcum, arista, ear of corn

lolium, tares

terere, thresh; **ārea**, threshing-floor

horreum, barn; **grānārium**, granary

acervus, heap

molere, grind; **pīstor**, miller (also baker);

pīstrinum, mola, mill; **mola**, millstone

farīna, flour

palea, chaff

strāmentum, straw, litter

8.3

pecus (n -oris), herd, cattle

pecus (f -udis), head of cattle, beast

pecuāria, breeding of cattle; **pecuārius**, cattle-
breeder; **pecuāria (P)**, herds of cattle

bōs, ox, cow; *adj. boārius, bovillus*;

iuvencus, bullock, ox; **iuvenca, būcula**,

heifer; **taurus**, bull; **vacca**, cow; **vitulus**,

calf (**vitulīna**, veal)

lac, milk; *adj. lacteus*; **cāseus**, cheese

mūgīre, low, bellow; *noun mūgītus*

praesēpe, stable, stall, pen

stabulum, stable

būbile, stall for oxen

saeptum, saepimentum, fence

8.4

grex, flock; **ovīle**, sheepfold

ovis, sheep; **agnus**, lamb; **agna**, ewe lamb
ōpiliō, shepherd
lāna, wool; *adj.* **lāneus**; **vellus**, fleece
ariēs, ram
vervēx, wether
caper, *f* **capra**, goat; **hircus**, he-goat; **haedus**,
 kid
porcus, pig; **verrēs**, male swine; **porca**, sow,
adj. **porcīnus**; **porcīna** *f*, pork
subulcus, swineherd
perna, ham
lārdum, bacon
hara, pigsty

q.v. domestic quadrupeds, 21.2

q.v. domestic birds, 21.5

8.5

pascere, pasture, feed; **pāstus**, feeding; fodder;
 pasture; **vēscī**, feed on; **pāscua**, pasture
sagīna, feeding, fodder, fatted animal; *verb*
sagīnāre
pāstor, herdsman; *adjs.* **pāstōrālis**,
pāstōricius
grāmen, grass, pasture; *adj.* **grāmineus**
prātum, meadow; **fēnum**, hay
falx, sickle
fēnīlia, hayloft

9 SEA, RIVER, ETC.

9.1

mare, sea
aequor, *poet.* **pontus** and **pelagus** *n*, sea
marīnus, **maritīmus**, of the sea;
trānsmarīnus, across the sea
altum, high sea, deep; in *a.* **prōvehī**, sail
 out to sea
Ōceanus, ocean
ōra, coast
lītus, shore
acta, beach
aestus, tide, surge
unda, **flūctus**, wave; **flūctuāre**, wave,
 undulate
salum, movement of sea; *s.* **aerumnōsum**, sea
 of troubles
gurges, **vorāgō**, whirlpool
vertex, *older* vortex, eddy; *adj.* **vorticōsus**

spūma, foam; *verb* **spūmāre**, foam, cover with
 foam; *adjs.* **spūmeus**, **spūmōsus**
aqua, water; *adjs.* **aquārius**, water-; **aquōsus**,
 rainy, moist; **aquātilis**, living in water;
aquārī, fetch water; *nouns* **aquātiō**,
aquātor
āridus, **siccus**, dry; **ārēre**, be dry; **siccāre**,
exārēscere, dry up
ūmidus, moist; *noun* **ūmor**; **ūvidus**, *poet.*,
 soaked; **madidus**, dripping; **madēre**, drip
mānāre, drip, flow
rōrāre, drip, trickle
stīllāre, drip, let drip
imbuere, **madefacere**, **perfundere**, wet
 (*trans.*)
irrigāre, water, irrigate; *noun* **irrigātiō**
alluere, wash, bathe
inundāre, inundate, overflow; *noun* **inundātiō**
ēluviō, inundation
vapor, steam; *verb* **vapōrāre**

9.2

flūmen, stream; **flūmine** *adversō*, up-stream;
flūmine *secundō*, down-stream; *pedibus*
f. **trānsīre**, ford a s.; *adj.* **flūmineus**,
poet.
amnis, **fluvius**, river; *adjs.* **fluviātilis**, **fluvialis**
canālis, canal, channel
fluere, flow; **dēfluere**, flow down or towards
confluēns, confluence of two rivers
pōns, bridge; *pontem* in **flūmine** *facere*,
 throw a b. over a river; *pontem*
interrumpere, *rescindere* *or*
interscindere, break down b.
rīvus, brook, stream; *diminutive* **rīvulus**
torrēns, torrent
fōns, spring, fountain; *diminutive* **fonticulus**
salientēs, fountains, springs
caput, source (*rarely* mouth) of river
vadum, shallow water, shoal, ford; *flūmen*
vadō *trānsīre*, ford a river; *adj.* **vadōsus**,
 shallow
rīpa, bank; *diminutive* **rīpula**
sinus, bay
aestuārium, estuary
fretum, **eurīpus**, strait, channel
lacus, lake, pond
puteus, well; **puteal**, curb of well
haurīre, draw (water); *noun* **haustus**
exhaurīre, draw out, drain off

9.3 transport by water

rēs nauticae, naval matters

nāvis, nāvigium, ship; *dim. nāvicula*
nāvis onerāria, merchant vessel, transport
lembus, yacht, cutter; **āctuāria, celōx**, swift sailing vessel, cutter; **phasēlus**, light vessel; **scapha**, boat; **linter**, row-boat; **ratis**, raft, pontoon
rēmus, oar; *rēmīs incumbere, nāvem rēmīs prōpellere*, row; *rēmīs concitāre, incitāre nāvēs rēmīs*, row hard
rēmex, rower; **rēmigium**, rowing, oars, oarsmen; **rēmigāre**, row
scalmus, rowlock
trānstrum, bench for rowers
birēmīs, trirēmīs, quadrirēmīs, vessels with two, three, four banks of oars
cōnscēnsiō in nāvēs, embarkation
ēgressus, ēscēnsiō, landing (from ship)
portus, harbour, haven; *portum petere, capere*, make land; *in portum venīre*, enter h.; *in portum pervenīre or sē recipere or portum tenēre*, reach h.; *in portū stāre*, ride at anchor
mōlēs, mole
iactārī tempestāte, be tossed about by storm
nāvis afflieta or afflictāta, damaged ship
naufragium, shipwreck; *n. facere*, be shipwrecked; *naufragiō perīre or interīre*, be lost in s.; **nāvis frangitur or dēperit**, ship founders; **naufragus, ēiectus in lītus or in lītore**, shipwrecked

9.4 navigation

ars gubernandī, navigation
nāvigāre, sail, navigate; *noun nāvigātiō*, voyage, travelling by sea
ēvehī, in altum prōvehī, put or sail out to sea
ōram legere, sail along the coast
applicāre (sc. nāvem) ad terram, steer to shore
dēferrī, fluitāre, drift
nauarchus, captain of ship
nauta, poet. nāvita, sailor
homō marītimus, seaman
gubernātor, pilot, mate, helmsman; **gubernāre**, steer; **gubernāculum**, helm
mālus, mast
vēlum, linteum, sail; *vēla dare, pandere*, set sail; *vēla contrahere*, reef sails
armāmenta P, tackle, rigging; **fūnis**, rope; **ancorāle**, cable
prōra, prow; **rōstrum**, beak, ram
alveus, hull of ship
carīna, keel; *poet. ship*
puppis, poop, stern (*also ship*)

ancora, anchor; *ancoram iacere*, cast a.; a. tollere *or mōlirī*, weigh a., set sail; *stāre or cōnsistere in ancorīs*, ride at a.

9.5 fleet

classis, fleet; *classem instruere*, draw up f.; *classī pūgnāre*, fight a naval battle; *adj. classicus*; **nāvis longa**, man-of-war
nāvibus plūrimum posse, have a powerful fleet
praefectus classis, commander, admiral; **nāvis praetōria**, flagship
classicī militēs, classiārīi, marines
militēs in nāvēs impōnere, put s. on board, embark s.; *m. (ex nāvibus) expōnere (in terram, in terrā, in lītora)*, land or disembark soldiers
proelium nāvāle, pūgna nāvālis, sea fight
nāvem expedīre, clear the decks for action
classēs concurrunt, the fleets charge; **concurus**, collision, shock
manūs ferreae, cōpulae, harpagō, grappling irons
in nāvem trāscendere, nāvem expūgnāre, board a ship
nāvem rōstrō percutere, ram a ship
nāvem dēmergere, submergere, dēprimere, sink a ship; *usu. in past part. submersus*; **sē mergere or mergī**, sink (*intrans.*)
nāvem in lītus agere, drive a ship on shore

q.v. transport by water, 9.3, 9.4

9.6 clean/unclean

clean, pure
pūrus, clean, spotless
mundus, clean, neat
incorruptus, integer, unspoilt, pure; *noun integritās*
lavāre, wash; **lābrum**, bath
tergēre, wipe, clean
mantēle, towel
pūrgāre, expūrgāre, clean, purify
unclean, soil
immundus, impūrus, spurcus, unclean; *noun impūritās*; *verb spurcāre*, defile
luteus, lutulentus, filthy
lutum, mud; **limus**, slime, mire; *adj. limōsus*; **caenum**, mire, filth; **illuviēs**, dirt, filth
macula, stain, blemish; *verb maculāre*; *adj. maculōsus*

situs, dirt, mould, rust
sordēre, be dirty; *noun sordēs*; *adj. sordidus*
squālere, be dirty; *noun squālor*; *adj. squālidus*
contāmināre, inquināre, oblinere, polluere, turpāre, defile, soil, besmirch
imbuere, taint
īficere, spoil, infect
contāctus, defiled, infected
dēprāvāre, pervert, corrupt; *noun dēprāvātiō*

9.7 liquid, oily

liquēre, be liquid; *noun liquor*; **liquidus**, liquid, clear; **liquefacere**, melt; **liquēscere**, grow liquid, melt
fluere, flow; **cōfluere**, flow together; **dēfluere**, flow down; **effluere**, flow forth
fundere, pour; **cōfundere**, pour together; **diffundere**, pour out or forth; **effundere**, pour forth
oleum, oil; *adj. oleārius*
lūbricus, slippery
linere, oblinere, smear
ung(u)ere, anoint, smear; **unguentum**, ointment, salve; **ūnctiō**, anointing; **ūnctor**, anointer
dēlibūtus, smeared, anointed
gutta, drop (thin and clear); **stilla**, drop (thick and viscous)

q.v. wet, drip, 9.1

10 SKY

10 sky

aethēr, (pure upper) air, ether; *adj. aetherius*;
āēr, (lower) air
anima, air (as element)
aura, air; *P poet.*, sky
caelum, heaven, sky; *serēnum c.*, clear sky;
caelestis, heavenly, of the sky
sub dīvō, under the open sky
caelestia P, heavenly bodies
stēlla, *poet. astrum*, star; **stēlla errāns** or **inerrāns**, planet; **sphaera**, orbit of planet;
trāiectiō stēllae, shooting star; **stēllāns**, **stēllātus**, starry
sīdus, star, constellation; *adj. sīdereus*
sīgnum, constellation
lūna, moon; *l. plēna*, full m.; *l. nova*, new m.; *dēfectiō lūnae*, eclipse of the m.;

dēfectus lūnae, waning of m.; *adjs. lūnāris*, moon-, **lūnātus**, crescent-shaped
vesper, evening star
lūcifer m G -erī, morning star
comētēs, comet; **crīnis**, tail of comet; **fax caelestis** or **caelī**, meteor
caelī interpres, astronomer
mōtūs stēllārum observāre, observe the movements of the stars
sōl, sun, heat of sun; **lūx**, **lūx sōlis**, or **sōl**, sunlight; *obscurātiō* or *dēfectiō sōlis*, eclipse of the sun
calor, warmth; *adj. calidus*; *verbs calēre*, be hot; **calefacere**, make hot
ārdor, heat; *verb ārdere*
aestus, heat, glow; *adj. aestuōsus*; *verb aestuāre*
orīrī, rise; **sōl oriēns** or **sōlis ortus**, sunrise
occidere, set; **sōl occidēns** or **sōlis occāsus**, sunset
obitus, setting (of heavenly bodies)
apricus, sunny; **apricārī**, take the sun, bask
obscurus, **opācus**, dark, dusky, shady; **obscurum**, darkness, shade; **opācare**, cast shade on

q.v. heat, 15; light, 16

11 SEASONS, WINDS, WEATHER

11.1 season

vēr, spring; *adj. vernus*
aestās, summer; *a. media*, mid-summer; *summā aestāte*, at the height of summer; *adj. aestivus*; *aestīva tempora*, summer time
autumnus, autumn; *adj. autumnālis*
hiemps, winter; *initā hieme*, at the beginning of w.; *summā hieme*, in the depth of w.; *ante exāctam hiemem*, before the end of w.; *iam prope hieme cōfectā*, when w. was nearly over; *adj. hibernus*

11.2 winds

ventus, wind; *v. secundus*, favourable w.; *v. adversus*, unfavourable w.; *v. remissus*, gentle w.; *vīs ventōrum*, fierce wind; *adj. ventōsus*
anima, aura, breeze
etēsiae, winds, during dog-days

flāre, blow; *noun flātus*, blast, wind
septentrionēs ventī, septentriō, north wind
boreās, north-east wind
aquilō, north wind (stricly NNE.)
caurus or cōrus, north-west wind
auster, poet. notus, south wind; **austrālis**, southern
eurus, south-east wind; **eurōus**, eastern
vulturnus ventus, ESE. wind
favōnius, poet. zephyrus, west wind

11.3 weather

caelum, climate, weather; *temperātiō caeli*, moderate climate
tempestās, weather; t. *bona, ēgregia, serēna, serēnitās caeli*, fine weather; t. *turbida, turbulenta*, rough, stormy weather; **commūtātiō caeli**, change of weather
sūdum, bright weather
tranquillitās, tranquillum, calmness, calm
malacia, calm (at sea)
nūbēs, nimbus, cloud; *diminutive nūbēcula; adj. nūbilus*
nūbila P, clouds
nebula, mist, fog
cāligō, dense fog; *adj. cāliginōsus*
pluvia, rain; **imber**, heavy rain; *assiduī imbrēs*, steady downpour; **pluit**, it rains; **pluvius, pluviālis**, rainy; *aquae pluviae*, rainwater

q.v. wet, 9.1

tempestās, procella, turbō, storm; *tempestās cooritur*, a s. rises
imprōvīsus, unforeseen
subītus, sudden
arcus (pluvius), rainbow
rōs, dew; *rōrēs*, dewdrops; *adj. rōscidus; rōrāre*, drop dew
ningit, it snows; **nix**, snow; *adjs. niveus, nivālis*
pruīna, hoar-frost
grandō, hail, hailstorm
frīgus, gelū, frost, cold; *vīs frīgoris*, keen frost; **frīgēre**, freeze; *adjs. frīgidus, gelidus*
glaciēs, ice; *adj. glaciālis*
stīria, icicle
gelāre, glaciāre, freeze (*trans.*); *impers. gelat*, it freezes
tonat, it thunders; *noun tonitrus or tonitrum*
fulgur, lightning; *verb fulgēre*

fulmen, thunderbolt, flash
ictus ē caelō, dē caelō percussus, fulmine or dē caelō tāctus, struck by lightning

12-20 PHYSICAL PROPERTIES

q.v. sound, 13; sight, 14; heat, 15; light, 16; size, 17; weight, 19

12.1 shape and consistency

fōrma, figūra, speciēs, shape; *verbs fōrmāre, fingere, figūrāre, cōnfōrmāre, infōrmāre*
cōnfōrmātiō, shaping
multifōrmis, of many shapes
infōrmis, shapeless, misshapen
dēfōrmis, prāvus, distortus, misshapen, deformed; *nouns dēfōrmitās, prāvitās; verb dēfōrmāre*
longus, long; *noun longitūdō*
brevis, short; *noun brevitās*

q.v. high, low, 5.4

lātus, amplus, capāx, wide; *nouns lātitudō, amplitūdō*
angustus, artus, narrow; **coartāre**, compress

q.v. large, small, 17.1

crassus, thick, coarse; *noun crassitūdō*
tenuis, thin; *noun tenuitās; verb extenuāre*
dēnsus, spissus, thick, dense; *verb spissāre*
rārus, of loose texture, thin; *noun rāritās*
rēctus, dērēctus, straight; *adv. rēctā (sc. viā)*, straight on, directly; **linea**, line; **perpendicularum**, plumb-line; *ad p.*, perpendicularly
prāvus, curvus, incurvus, crooked; *noun prāvitās; verbs curvāre, incurvāre*
aduncus, hooked
cavus, concavus, hollow, concave; *verb cavāre*
convexus, rounded, convex, concave
quadrātus, square; *noun quadrātum*
rotundus, teres, round
circulus, circle
orbis, anything round (circle, etc.)
gyrus, circle
globus, ball; *adj. globōsus*
centrum, media pars, centre
radius, radius (of circle)

circinus, pair of compasses
acūtus, sharp; *verb acuerē*
hebes, retūsus, blunt; *verbs hebēre*, be blunt;
hebetāre, retundere, blunt

senses

sēnsus, sense, sensation, feeling; **ea quae subiecta sunt sēnsibus**, what can be perceived by the senses
sentire, feel, perceive, be sensible of

12.2 touch

tāctus, sense of touch, act of touching
tangere, contingere, tractāre, attrectāre, contrectāre, touch; **pertractāre**, feel all over; *noun tractātiō*, touching; *adj. tractābilis*
dūrus, hard; *noun dūritia*; *verbs dūrāre, obdūrēscere*
mollis, soft; *noun mollitia, mollitiēs*; *verb mollire*, soften; **mollēscere**, grow soft
tener, tender, soft; *noun teneritās*
solidus, firm, hard; **solidum**, firmness
firmus, firm; *nouns firmitās, firmitūdō*
rigidus, stiff; **rigēre**, be stiff; **rigēscere**, become stiff
flaccidus, fluidus, flabby
asper, rough; *noun asperitās*; *verb exasperāre*
horridus, rough, prickly
lēvis, smooth; *noun lēvitās*

touch lightly, touch upon

tangere, touch upon, refer to
rādere, touch, graze, pass close by
Actg orātiōne percurrere, touch upon
stringere, touch lightly; **strictim**, superficially, summarily
perstringere, trānsire, touch upon

12.3 smell

odōrātus, sense of smell, act of smelling
odor, smell (good or bad); o. *suāvis, or iūcundus*, fragrance, scent; o. *taeter or gravis, or fētor*, bad smell; *adj. fētidus*
olēre, redolēre, smell of; *nihil olēre*, have no smell; **olfacere**, smell, follow a scent
nīdor, smell (of things burnt, singed, cooked)
pūtēre, stink

12.4 taste

gustātus, sense of taste

sapor, taste, flavour; *sine sapōre*, tasteless
gustāre, taste; *primis labris g.*, get a slight taste of; **sapere**, have a taste
dulcis, suāvis, sweet, agreeable; *nouns dulcēdō, dulcitūdō*
palātō iūcundus, toothsome, palatable
acerbus, harsh, sour; *intensive peracerbus*; *noun acerbitās*
acidus, sour, tart; **acēscere**, grow sour; **salsus**, salt (*adj.*); **amārus**, bitter

13 SOUND

13.1

sēnsus aurium, (sense of) hearing
sonus, sonitus, sound; *sonum percipere*, hear a s.; *sonōs fundere*, utter s.; *verb sonāre*, emit a s., utter, call, sing, cause to s.; **personāre**, resound, ring with, echo with; **resonāre**, resound, re-echo
clārus, loud, distinct; *noun clāritās*
argūtus, shrill, distinct, murmuring, rattling, etc.
acūtus, high; **gravis**, low
tacitus, silēns, noiseless, silent
clangor, noise (espec. of birds)
strepitus, din; *verb strepere*
strīdor, harsh sound; *verb strīdēre, strīdere*, hiss, creak, rattle, buzz
crepitus, rattling, etc., sound; *verb crepāre, crepitāre, increpāre*
tinnire, clink, jingle; **tintinnābulum**, bell
sibilus, whistling; *verb sibilāre*
fremitus, roaring sound; *verb fremere*
fragor, crash, din
mūgītus, roaring, crashing sound; *verb mūgīre*
murmur, humming, roaring, growling sound; *verb murmurāre*
gemitus, sigh, groan, moan; *verb gemere, ingemiscere*
gemere, also roar, creak

q.v. voice, speech, 41

audītus, sense of hearing; *verb audire, exaudire*
auribus percipere, hear
aurem or aurēs admovēre D, or aurēs praebēre, lend an ear
auscultāre, listen

13.2 music

mūsica, mūsicē, mūsica *P*, music; *adj.*
mūsicus, *as noun*, musician
modus, melody, harmony, rhythm; *espec. in P*,
tune, strain
numerus, musical measure, harmony;
numerōsus, rhythmical
harmonia, harmony
canōrus, melodious, sweet-sounding
absonus, discordant
tībia, flute; **tībīcen** (*m*), **tībīcina** (*f*), flute-
player
cithara, lute; **fidēs** (*P*), **lyra**, lute, lyre;
fidibus discere, docēre, learn, teach the
l.; *fidibus canere*, play the l.; **fidicen**,
lute-player
psallere, play on the cithara
plectrum, quill
fistula, reed pipe
cymbalum, cymbal
tympanum, tambourine
tuba, (straight) trumpet; **tubīcen**, trumpeter
būcina, cornū, (curved) trumpet; **cornicen**,
horn-blower
lituus, curved trumpet (of cavalry); **liticen**,
trumpeter
classicum, trumpet signal

q.v. song, 41.13

14 SIGHT

14.1

sēnsus videndī or oculōrum, aspectus, (sense
of) sight
vīsus, sight, vision; look, glance
vidēre, see; *bene oculis v.*, have good sight;
ācrius v., have keen sight; **cernere**, see
(distinctly); *parum acūtē c.*, have poor
sight
oculī ācrēs atque acūtī, keen sight; **aciēs**,
sharpness of sight
cōnspicere, dispicere, cōnspicārī, oculīs
percipere, see, behold; **cōnspectus**, view,
range of sight, attention; *venire in*
cōnspectum, come into sight; *ē cōnspectū*
abire, go out of sight; **cōnspiciuus**, visible
prōspicere, prōspectāre, look out; *longē or*
multum prōspicere, have an extensive
prospect; **prōspectus**, view, prospect, sight

spectāre, see (as a spectator), gaze at;
spectāculum, spectacle, sight, show; *Dpn*
s. praebēre, s. (or spectāculō) esse,
present a sight; **spectātor**, onlooker,
witness; **speculāre**, look round, spy out,
watch
aspicere, respicere, vīsere, look at, regard;
nouns aspectus, look, appearance, sight;
quae sub aspectum veniunt or cadunt,
all things visible; **respectus**, looking back or
about
tuērī, look at, watch
intuērī, contuērī, look at or towards, consider;
rēctis oculis intuērī, look at with
unyielding glance
obtūtus, contemplation, look
contemplārī, view attentively, survey; *noun*
contemplatiō
aspectāre, look at intently
intrōspicere, perspicere, īnspectāre, look on,
examine, inspect, consider
collūstrāre, look at from all sides
oculum (or oculōs) adicere *D or ad Ac*, turn
the eyes to, contemplate
oculōs in Ac dēfigere, fix one's eyes on
oculōs in Ac conicere, look at

14.2 in/out of sight

in sight; display, search for, find

praesēns, present
cōram, palam, openly; *cōram adesse*, be
present; *cōram with Ab*, in the presence of
īnspectantibus nōbīs, before our eyes
vulgō, openly, publicly, before all the world
in medium venire or prōcēdere, prōcēdere
in sōlem et pulverem, appear in public
habitāre oculīs, vīvere in oculīs cīvium, be in
the public eye
in ōre omnium cottīdiē versārī, be always in
the public eye
haerēre in oculīs, be ever before the eyes
scaenae servīre, live in the public eye

patēre, stand, lie, be open
exhibēre, mōnstrāre, ostendere, ostentāre,
explicāre, exprōmere, indicāre, ante
oculōs or in oculīs pōnere, praeferre,
prōdere, show, display
prae sē ferre or gerere Actg., manifest,
display
repraesentāre, show, display, represent

patefacere, recludere, in aspectum lucemque proferre, promere, detegere, retegere, reveal, throw open, disclose, bring to light;
noun patefactio
apparere, comparere, se offerre *Dpn*, in medium procedere, prodire, appear
dilucere, elucere, be clear
aperire, open, reveal; **apertus,** open, uncovered
quaerere, conquirere, exquirere, inquirere, requirere, petere, seek, search for;
perquirere, petessere, search keenly for;
nouns conquisitio, inquisitio
explorare, try to find out
scrutari, look through, examine
vestigare, track, seek out
repetere, seek again
invenire, reperire, find; **inventio,** invention
recuperare, recover; *noun recuperatio*

out of sight; hide, lose

absens, absent
clam, clanculum, secretly; *with Ab*, without the knowledge of, unknown to
furtim, stealthily
latere, latitare, lie hid; *noun latibulum, latebrae,* hiding-place; **latebrosus,** full of hiding-places
delitescere, hide (*intrans.*)
celare, dissimulare, occultere, abdere, abstrudere, contegere, obtegere, hide (*trans.*); *noun occultum,* hiding-place
recondere, stow away, hide, conceal
abscondere, put out of the way, hide (carefully)
furari, remove secretly
operire, tegere, protegere, cover, keep secret;
cooperire, cover completely
res opertae, secrets
integumentum, cover, cloak
velare, veil, conceal
abditus, abstrusus, clandestinus, furtivus, occultus, concealed, secret
reconditus, hidden, sequestered, abstruse
secretus, remote, secret; *noun secretum,* solitude; secret
recessus, secessus, hidden place, retreat
evanescere, disappear
remotus, distant, remote
arcanus, hidden, secret; *noun arcenum,* secret
amittere, lose; *noun amissio*
perdere, deperdere, lose (through my fault)

14.3 beautiful/ugly

beautiful, charming

pulcher, beautiful, fine; *noun pulchritudo*
forma, (personal) beauty; *adj. formosus, noun formositas*
species, beauty; *adj. speciosus*
nitens, brilliant, beautiful
candidus, fair; *noun candor*
venustus, comely, charming, winsome, graceful; *noun venustas*
concinnus, pretty, dainty, graceful
dulcis, blandus, pleasant, charming; **dulcedo,** charm; **blandior,** allure, attract
lepor, charm, agreeableness; *adj. lepidus,* of charming manners, graceful
bellus, pretty, charming, elegant
aureolus, delicatus, charming, delightful
exquisitus, choice, excellent
amoenus, lovely, delightful, picturesque (espec. of scenery, e.g. *loca amoena*); *noun amoenitas*
laetus, delightful, pleasing
ornare, adornare, exornare, decorare, expolire, illuminare, polire, adorn, embellish; *nouns ornamentum,* ornament; **ornatus,** ornament (collective); **exornatio, decus,** ornament, embellishment; **expolitio,** embellishing
commendare, make agreeable, grace; *noun commendatio*

ugly

deformis, ugly; *noun deformitas*
infirmis, hideous
taeter, revolting
turpis, ugly, foul
foedus, disgusting, loathsome; *noun foeditas*
obscenus, ugly, filthy
squalidus, dirty, ugly
deformare, disfigure, mar
foedare, make foul, defile, pollute
commaculare, soil, defile
inquinare, soil, stain, besmirch
infuscare, disfigure

14.4 colour

color, colour; *verb colorare*

pigmentum, colour, paint
pingere, paint; **pictor,** painter; **pictura,** (art of) painting, picture; **tabula (picta),** picture
tingere, inficere, sufficere, dye; **infector,** dyer
fucare, dye, paint; **fucatus, fucosus,** painted
suffundere, tinge, colour

albus, (dull) white; **candidus**, **candēns**, (glossy) white; *verbs* **albēre**, be white; **albēscere**, become white
nivālis, **niveus**, snow-white
candor, whiteness
āter, (dull) black; **niger**, (glossy) black
caeruleus, *poet.* **caerulus**, azure, dark-blue
caesius, **glaucus**, bluish grey
lividus, bluish, of leaden colour
ruber, **rufus**, red; *noun* **rubor**; **pūniceus** scarlet
ferrūgō, dark-red colour
fūcus, red or purple colour
purpura, crimson (colour); *adj.* **purpureus**, crimson, reddish, brownish
viola, violet colour
spādīx, chestnut brown
roseus, rose-coloured, rosy
viridis, green; *verb* **virēre**, be green
rutilus, red, golden yellow; *verb* **rutilāre**
flāvus, *poet.* **flāvēns**, (golden) yellow
luteus, **croceus**, saffron yellow, golden yellow
lūridus, **gilvus**, pale yellow
fulvus, (deep) yellow, tawny
rāvus, greyish yellow, tawny
fuscus, dark, tawny
pullus, dark grey, blackish
discolor, of different colour(s)
varius, **versicolor**, many-coloured; *noun* **varietās**

q.v. colours of charioteers, 35.5

15 HEAT

calor, heat; *adj.* **calidus**; *verb* **calēre**, be hot; **calefacere**, make hot; **calēscere**, grow hot; **concalefacere**, heat thoroughly; **concalēscere**, grow thoroughly hot; **recalēscere**, grow hot again
candēre, glow
ārdor, (burning) heat; *verb* **ārdēre**, be on fire
fervor, (glowing) heat; *adj.* **fervēns**, **fervidus**; *verb* **fervēre**
aestus, (excessive) heat; *adj.* **aestuōsus**; *verb* **aestuāre**, feel hot
tepor, lukewarmness; *adj.* **tepidus**; **tepēre**, be lukewarm
tepefacere, make warm; **tepēscere**, become warm
flābellum, fan
frīgus, **gelū**, cold; **frīgidus**, cold; **gelidus**, (icy) cold; *verb* **frīgēre**, be cold; **refrīgerāre**,

grow cold, cool; **gelāre**, **congelāre**, freeze (*trans.*)
algēre, feel cold; *noun* **algor**
ignis, fire; **igniculus**, little fire, spark; *adj.* **igneus**
flamma, flame; *adj.* **flammeus**; **scintilla**, spark; **fūmus**, smoke; *verb* **fūmāre**; *adj.* **fūmidus**, **fūmōsus**; **cinis**, ashes; **favilla**, glowing ashes, hot cinders; **fūligō**, soot
focus, hearth
fornāx, stove
camīnus, stove, fire
accendere, **incendere**, **īnflammāre**, set on fire, light; **incēnsiō**, **īnflammātiō**, burning
succendere, light from below
incendium, fire, conflagration; i. *facere*, set fire
cōnflagrāre, be burnt up; *noun* **cōnflagrātiō**
tēctīs ignēs īnferre, set fire to houses
ignem comprehendere, **flamam concipere**, catch fire
ūrere, burn, scorch, parch (*trans.*); **adūrere**, burn, singe; **ambūrere**, scorch, singe; **combūrere**, **dēūrere**, **exūrere**, or **perūrere**, burn up, consume; *noun* **exūstiō**
effervēscere, **refervēre**, **refervēscere**, boil up
flagrāre, blaze; *noun* **flagrantia**; **exārdēscere**, blaze up
torrēre, dry, parch
exstinguere, **restinguere**, put out; *noun* **restinctiō**

16 LIGHT

lūmen, **lūx**, light; *adhibēre* 1. *Dtg.*, throw light on; *adjs.* **lūminōsus**, **lūcidus**, **dīlūcidus**; *verbs* **illūmināre**, light; **lūcēre**, shine
radius, ray, beam; **radiātus**, beaming
clārus, **illūstris**, bright; *verbs* **clārēre**, be bright; **clārāre**, **illūstrāre**, make bright
splendor, **nitor**, brightness; *adj.* **splendidus**, **nitidus**, shining, bright; *verbs* **splendēre**, **nitēre** and **splendēscere**, become bright
collūcēre, shine brightly (*also* be lit up)
ēnitēre, shine forth
fulgēre, flash, gleam; **micāre**, glitter, flash
candēre, shine, glisten
obscurus, dark; *noun* **obscurum**; *verb* **obscurāre**
opācus, dark, shady; *verb* **opācāre**
umbra, shade; *verb* **obumbrāre**; *adjs.* **umbrifer**, **umbrōsus**, **umbrātilis**
tenebrae, darkness; *adj.* **tenebricōsus**; **cāligō**, gloom, darkness

lucerna, lūmen, oil lamp
lanterna, lantern, lamp
lychnus, lamp; **lychnūchus**, lampstand
taeda, fax, lampas, torch
fūnāle, wax torch

q.v. sunlight, 10

17-20 SIZE AND QUANTITY

q.v. shape, 12.1

17.0

quantus? how great?; **tantus**, so great
spatium, size, bulk, extent
modus, size, quantity
tantus... quantus..., as great... as...

17.1 large/small

large

māgnus, great, large; *adv.* **māgnopere**; *noun*
māgnitūdō
māgnam partem, in great part
grandis, large; **subgrandis**, rather large
amplus, great, large, wide, spacious;
amplitūdō, extent, size
quantuscumque, however great
quantusvīs, as large as you like
laxus, spatiōsus, spacious, roomy; *noun*
laxitās
immodicus, immoderate
immānis, immēnsus, ingēns, vāstus,
ēnōrmis, huge; *nouns* **immānitās,**
immēnsitās

small

parvus, small; *adv.* **paulum**, slightly;
diminutive **parvulus**
mediocris, middling, ordinary; *noun*
mediocritās
modicus, of a moderate or reasonable size;
middling, scanty, small
aliquantus, somewhat, tolerable, not a little
minūtus, small, minute
exiguus, very small, tiny, scanty, trifling; *noun*
exiguitās
nūgātōrius, trifling, futile
rēs parva or levis or minūta, trifle;
indīviduum, atom
exilis, small, weak, feeble; *noun* **exilitās**

pusillus, very small, petty, insignificant
tantulus, so trifling, insignificant; *noun*
tantulum
nē pilō quidem minus, not a hair's breadth
less

17.2 larger/smaller

larger and largest

māior, larger; *nihilō m.*, no greater; **māior**
(*or māgna*) **pars**, majority; *adv.* **magis**
māiōrem in modum, in a higher degree
augēre, make larger, increase
addere, adicere, adiungere, add; *noun*
adiectiō
aggregāre, add, join with
exaggerāre, amplificāre, increase, amplify;
nouns **amplificātiō, amplificātor**
crēscere, grow; *noun* **incrēmentum**
gliscere, grow gradually
anteire Ac or D, antecēdere Ac or D,
antecellere D, excellere Dp, exsuperāre
Ac, praecēdere Ac, praecellere Ac,
praecurrere Ac, praestāre D, superāre Ac,
vincere, surpass, excel
přimārius, chief, excellent
přincipālis, chief
praecipuus, excellent, extraordinary
māximus, largest; *adv.* **māximē**
māximam partem, for the most part
supřēmus, greatest, extreme

smaller and smallest

minor, smaller; *adv.* **minus**
minuere, dēminuere, imminuere, extenuāre,
make smaller, lessen; *noun* **imminūtiō**
coartāre, compress, contract
dēcrēscere, minor fieri, minuī, grow smaller,
decrease
circumcēdere, reduce
redigere ex Ab ad Ac, reduce
dēterere, wear down, reduce
attenuāre, diminish, reduce
minuere, lessen, reduce, restrict
minimus, smallest; *adv.* **minimē**

q.v. growth, 3.2, 3.5

17.3 much/little

much and many

quantum? how much?; **tantum, tantopere**, so
much, so greatly, to such a degree
quot? how many?; **tot**, so many

multus, much (*adj.*); *noun* **multitūdō**;
multum (*noun and adv.*)
mōlēs, heavy mass
pondus, mass
acervus, **cumulus**, heap, pile; *verbs*
coacervāre, **cumulāre**
congerere, **struere**, heap or pile up; *nouns*
congeriēs, **struēs**, pile; **congestus**, carrying
together
valdē, **admodum**, **abundē**, **perquam**, **summē**,
much, very (*adv.*), exceedingly, extremely
impēnsē, greatly, very much
māgnā ex parte, to a great extent
adeō, so much
multī, many; **plūrimī**, very many
nōnnēmō, several, many a one
complūrēs, several, very many
plērīque, most, very many; *adv.* **plērumque**
māgnā or māiōre or mākīmā ex parte,
mostly
in prīmīs, chiefly, mainly, specially
multiplex, manifold

too much

nimis, **nimum**, too much; *also adv.*
nimius, **immodicus**, excessive
extrā modum, immoderately
supervacāneus, superfluous
satis superque, superabundantly

more and less, more and fewer

plūs (n), more; *G plūris*, e.g. *plūris tē
faciō*, value you more
amplius, more, further, besides
plūrēs, more; *plūrēs sumus quam ...*, we
outnumber
minus (n), less; *verb minuere*

little and few

tantum ... quantum ..., as much ... as ...
tot ... quot ..., as many ... as ...
totidem, just as many
aliquantus, some; *noun aliquantum*, a
quantity, some amount; *advs.* **aliquantum**,
aliquantō
nōn nihil, somewhat
quādam ex parte, **ex aliquā parte**, to some
extent
paulum, **paululum**, a little
parum, only a little
mediocriter, fairly, not very, not much
paucī, few; **perpaucī**, very few; *noun paucitās*
ūnus aut alter, one or two
semel aut iterum, once or twice
rārus, scattered, far apart; *noun rāritās*

aliquot, a few

ūnus, one; *nē ūnus quidem*, not even one, not
a single

too little

parum, too little, not enough; *also adv.*

minus (n), less; *verb minuere*

17.4 enough/almost

enough

satis, enough; *s. superque*, enough and to
spare; **satiāre**, **saturāre**, satisfy, sate
affatim, sufficiently, abundantly
sufficere, **suppetere**, be enough

almost

paene, **ferē**, **fermē**, **prope**, **propemodum**,
almost, nearly
vix, **ferē**, **fermē** (*with neg.*), scarcely
vixdum, scarcely yet

17.5 all/none

all, some

omnis, all; *omnēs ad ūnum*, all to a man
ūniversī, all (as a body); *opposite singulī*,
single, individuals; **singillātīm**, singly,
separately
cūctus, all (together)
omnēs rēs, **omnia**, **nihil nōn**, everything
aliquis (f quae or qua), **nesciō quis**, someone
ūllus, any
nōnnūllī, some
aliquid, something
quīdam, someone, a certain one
aliī ... aliī ..., **partim ...**, **partim ...**, some ...
others ...

only, none

sōlus, only (*adj.*); **sōlitūdō**, loneliness;
sōlitārius, lonely, alone
ūnicus, only, sole
proprius, **praecipuus**, special, particular
sōlum, **tantum**, **dumtaxat**, only (*adv.*), merely
nūllus, no (*adj.*)
nihil, nothing
nēmō, nobody; **nec quisquam**, and no one

17.6 whole/part

whole

tōtus, whole, complete; *ex tōtō*, quite, completely
plēnus, explētus, perfectus, complete, perfect;
noun perfectiō; **perficere**, complete
solidus, complete, entire, whole
integer, whole
ūniversus (e.g. *exercitus*), whole
tōtum, whole (*noun*)
summa, whole (amount); *in summā*, *in omnī summā*, in all
omnīnō, penitus, prōrsus, omnī ex parte, rādīcitus or funditus (e.g. *tollere*),
stirpitus (e.g. *extrahere*), wholly, entirely, absolutely
ferē, fermē, quite, entirely, just

q.v. together and apart, 6.3

part

incohātus, imperfectus, incomplete
pars, part, share; *māior* (or *māgna*) *p.*, majority; *diminutive particula*
ex parte, in part
portiō, share, part
commūnicāre *Ac cum Ab*, share with
cōnsociāre, share; *noun cōnsociātiō*
cōnsors, sharing
partīrī, dispertīre, share, divide, distribute
particeps, sharing, partaking; *p. sum*, take part; **participāre**, share
partim, partly; *partim ... , partim ... , partly ... , partly ...*
dīvidere, divide, distribute; *noun dīvisiō*;
indīviduus, indivisible
tribuere, divide
dēligere, ēligere, sēligere, choose, select;
nouns dēlectus, ēlectiō, sēlectiō
discribere, distribuere, divide, distribute, allot; *nouns discriptiō, distribūtiō*
assīgnāre, attribuere, assign, allot; *nouns assīgnātiō, attribūtiō*

17.7 equal/unequal

equal and like

pār, aequālis, aequus, equal; *noun aequālitās*; *verbs adaequāre, exaequāre*;
sē cum Abpn e., pit oneself against
pariter, ex aequō, aequē, equally; *hunc aequē ac patrem* (as a father) *vereor*
parī intervāllō, at the same distance

similis, like; *superl. simillimus*, closely resembling; *noun similitūdō*; *verb simulāre*, make like; **assimulāre**, copy, imitate

propior (proximus) D, more (most) like
imitārī, imitate; *nouns imitatiō, imitātor*; *adj. imitābilis*
imāgō, effigiēs, likeness; **effingere**, portray
īnstar, likeness; *i. montis*, like a mountain
vicem or ad vicem or vice G, like
comparāre, cōnferre, compare; *nouns comparātiō, collātiō*

q.v. correspond, 49.3

unequal and unlike

dispār, impār, inaequālis, unequal
impariter, unequally
dissimilis, dīversus, absimilis, unlike; *noun dissimilitūdō*
differre, distāre, discrepāre cum or ab Abtg,
dissentīre ab Abtg, differ; *multum distāre ab Ab*, differ greatly from; *nouns discrepantia, distantia*
abhorrēre ab Ab, differ from
interesse, differ
alius ac, different from
discernere, distinguere, dīiudicāre, distinguish; *noun distinctiō*

17.8 same/other

same

īdem, eadem, idem, same
nōn or haud alius, same
īdem, nōn or haud aliter, in the same way
unō tempore, unā, at the same time
ībīdem, in the same place
īndīdem, from the same place

other

alius, other
alter, other (of two), *also* second
cēterī, cēterum, the rest
varius, varied, various, diverse; *noun varietās*;
verb variāre
aliter, aliōquī(n), otherwise
contrāriē, in an opposite direction
mūtāre, alter, change; *noun mūtātiō*; *adj. mūtābilis*
commūtāre, permūtāre, change completely;
noun permūtātiō
immūtāre, change (partially)
vicissitūdō, change

17.91 quotus

quotus? which? (in numerical order)

prīmus, first

prīnceps, first (in rank, importance)

prīmum (*adv.*), first, in the first place

postrēmus, **ultimus**, **extrēmus**, **novissimus**,
last

postrēmō, lastly, finally

postrēmum, for the last time

17.92 numbering

numerus, number; **numerāre**, number, reckon

dīnumerāre, count up; **dīnumerātiō**,
enumeration

studia or **scientia numerōrum**, arithmetic

rationem dūcere or **habēre** or **subdūcere**,

ratiōcinārī, make a computation, calculate;

subductiō, calculation

ēnumerāre, **inīre numerum**, **ōrdināre**,
reckon up, enumerate

Acqn **dē numerō excerpere**, exclude one from
a number

recēnsēre (e.g. *militēs*), count, muster

addere, add

summam facere or **subdūcere**, calculate the
total

dēdūcere, subtract

multiplicāre, multiply

dīvidere, divide

17.93 two

ambō, both

alteruter, one of both

uter, which (of two), one (of two)

uterlibet, one of two

uterque, each of two, both

utercumque, whichever of the two

utervīs, either, whichever (of two) you please

utrimque, from or on both sides

utrōque, in both directions

alternus, one after another, alternate

alterum tantum, as much again

anceps, double (extending on two opposite
sides)

duplex, double (existing in two like forms)

duplus, double

geminus, double; *verb* **gemināre**

bipartītus, divided into two parts

duābus partibus ampli, twice as much

mūtuus, reciprocal, mutual; *adv.* **mūtuō**

17.94 order, row

ōrdō, order, row; *ōrdine* or *in* (*or per*)

ōrdinem, or *ex ōrdine*, in turn; *extrā*

ōrdinem, out of turn; **ōrdināre**, arrange in
rows

seriēs, row, sequence

passim, without order, anyhow

dīgerere, **struere**, **īnstruere**, arrange, set in
order

18.1 measure

mēnsūra, measure; *verbs* **mētīrī**, **dīmētīrī**

modus, measure

modius, peck; **amphora** = 6 gals. 7 pts.;

congius, one-eighth of amphora; **sextārius**,
one-sixth of congius, = about one pint; one
sixteenth of modius

ulna, **cubitum**, ell

pēs, foot; **uncia**, inch

decempeda, measuring rod (10 ft. long)

passus, pace (5 Roman feet)

stadium, 125 paces (just over 600 English
feet)

mīlle passuum, mile

lapis, **mīlliārium**, milestone

18.2 limit

modus, limit, right measure, bounds; *Dtg*

modum appōnere or *impōnere* or *adhibēre*,

set a limit to; *extrā modum prōdīre* (e.g.
sūmptū), observe no limit; *modum trānsīre*,

overstep the limit; *ultrā modum*, beyond the
limit; **modicus**, moderate; **immodestus**,
immoderate

finis, limit; *certōs sibi finēs*
cōstituere, set oneself definite limits;

finem trānsīre, *extrā finēs ēgredī*,
overstep the limit; **finīre**, limit

terminus, limit; **termināre**, limit, mark off;
terminātiō, delimitation, limit

cancelli, limits (*lit.* railings)

19 weight

pondus, weight

exāmināre, **expendere**, weigh

statēra, steelyard, balance; **trutina**, pair of
scales, balance; **lanx**, scale (of balance)

libra, balance; pound (of 12 ounces)

uncia, ounce; **sēmūncia**, half-ounce

pondō, *adv.*, in weight; *as indecl. noun* pounds, e.g. *aurī sex pondō*
gravis, heavy; *noun gravitās*
levis, light; *noun levitās*
mōlēs, weight, burden
onus, burden; **onustus**, loaded; **onerāre**, load, burden
opprimere, burden, weigh upon

20.1 fulness

cōpia, plenty
abundāre, be rich in; *noun abundantia*
redundāre, have an excess of, overflow; *noun redundantia*
affluere, abound; *adj. affluēns*; *noun affluentia*
circumfluere, flow over, abound
cōfluere, crowd together (*intrans.*)
cōstīpāre, crowd together (*trans.*)
plēnus, **replētus**, full
farcīre, **cōnfercīre**, **refercīre**, **stīpāre**, stuff, pack together; **cōnferthus**, **refertus** *Ab*, full of, crammed with
complēre, **explēre**, **implēre**, **opplēre**, **replēre**, fill; *noun complēmentum*
supplēre, refill
frēquēns, **celeber**, crowded; *nouns frequentia*, **celebritās**; *verb frequentāre*
crēber, thick with

20.2 lack

sine *Ab*, without
inops *G*, destitute of, without; **inopia**, lack, scarcity
inānis, **vacuus**, empty, bare, void, free from; *noun inānitās*
vacāre, be empty, void
carēre *Ab*, be without, in want of
abesse *D*, be wanting
egēre, **indigēre**, *G or Ab*, lack; *noun indigentia*
egēnus, destitute, void of; *noun egestās*
expers *G*, devoid of, without
orbis *Ab*, deprived of, without
nūdus *Ab*, void, without, e.g. *urbs nūda praesidiō*; *verb nūdāre*, e.g. *mūrus nūdātus dēfēnsōribus*
dēficere, be lacking, fail; *Pass. Ab or ab Ab*, lack; *noun dēfectiō*
dēesse; *dēsunt mihi librī*, I am in want of books
privāre, e.g. *Acpn somnō*, *vītā*, *approbātiōne*, deprive, strip of

dēsertus, **vāstus**, solitary, waste, unoccupied
īnfrequēns, not numerous, sparsely attended; *noun īnfrequentia*
exhaurīre, empty

21 ANIMALS

21.1

animal, animal
bēstia, beast (any living creature, except man)
bēlua, (huge) animal
sexus, sex
mās, male; **fēmīna**, female
pullus, young animal
pellis, skin, hide, pelt; **pellītus**, clad in skins
corium, hide, leather
alūta, soft leather
cornū, horn; *adj. corneus*
ungula, hoof
iuba, mane
cauda, tail
saeta, hair (of animal), bristle
horrēre, **horrēscere**, bristle

21.2 domestic mammals

cīcur, tame
equus, horse; **equa**, mare; **pullus**, foal; *adj. equīnus*
hinnīre, neigh; *noun hinnītus*

q.v. riding, 7.6

q.v. racing, 35.3

asinus, donkey; **mūlus**, mule; **mūliō**, muleteer
iūmentum, beast of burden
canis, dog; c. *sagāx*, d. with keen scent;
catulus, **catula**, **catellus**, **catella**, lap-dog
lātrāre, bark
fēlēs or fēlis, cat
mūs, mouse

q.v. farmstock, 8

21.3 wild mammals

fera, wild beast
ferus, wild
domāre, **mānsuēfacere**, tame
intractātus, untamed
cunīculus, rabbit; **lepus**, hare

cervus, stag; **cerva**, hind
alcēs, elk
lupus, **lupa**, wolf; **vulpēs**, fox; *dimin.*
vulpēcula; **lynx**, lynx
aper, wild boar
ursus, **ursa**, bear
leō, **lea**, **leaena**, lion; **tigris**, tiger
panthēra, panther
hyaena, hyena
elephās, **elephantus**, elephant
ebur, ivory; *adj.* **eburneus**
camēlus, camel
dromas, dromedary
dorcas, gazelle, antelope
onager, wild ass
sīmia, monkey
castor, beaver
mustēla, weasel
nitēdula, dormouse
talpa, mole

vēnārī, **captāre**, hunt; **vēnātor**, hunter;
vēnātiō, hunting, chase
laqueus, snare; *collum inserere in*
laqueum, get caught; **illaqueāre**, ensnare
illigāre, entangle, ensnare
plaga, snare, trap; **rēte**, net
excipere, catch

21.4 birds

avis, **volucris**, bird; **āles**, (large) bird
nīdus, nest; *diminutive* **nīdulus**
ōvum, egg; **parere**, **pōnere**, lay (eggs)
aviārium, aviary
āla, wing; **volucer**, **āles**, **āliger**, *poet.* winged
penna, feather, wing
plūma, feather; *P* down; *adj.* **plūmātus**
volāre, fly; **volitāre**, fly to and fro, flutter
rōstrum, beak; **unguis**, talon

21.5 domestic birds

gallus, cock; **gallīna**, hen; **pullus**, chicken;
pullārius, chicken keeper
canere, crow, sing; **strepere**, cackle
crista, cockscomb
ānser, gander, goose
anas, duck
columba, dove, pigeon; **columbārium**,
dovecot
pāvō, peacock
cavea, bird cage

21.6 wild birds

passer, sparrow
hirundō, swallow
cicōnia, stork
cycnus, **olor**, swan; *adj.* **olōrīnus**
corvus, raven; **cornīx**, crow
merula, blackbird
palumbēs, wood-pigeon
turtur, turtle-dove
pīca, magpie
pīcus, woodpecker
monēdula, **grāculus**, jackdaw
coturnīx, quail
grūs, crane
ardea, heron
alcēdō, **alcyōn**, kingfisher
aquila, eagle
accipiter, hawk
vulturius, vulture
mīlvus, kite
būbō, **noctua**, owl
strix, screech-owl
aucupārī, go birdcatching; **aucupium**,
birdcatching; **auceps**, birdcatcher, fowler

21.7 fish

piscis, fish
nāre, **natāre**, swim; *noun* **natātiō**
squāma, scale
piscārī, fish; **piscātor**, fisherman, fishmonger;
piscātus, fishery; **piscīna**, fishpond
rēte, net; **hāmus**, hook; **līnea**, line
delphīn, **delphīnus**, dolphin
lollīgō, **sēpia**, cuttlefish
mūrēx, crimson fish
cancer, crab; **ostrea**, oyster
conchylium, shellfish, oyster
margarīta, pearl

21.8 reptiles

anguis, **serpēns**, **coluber**, **colubra**, snake
vīpera, viper
serpere, **rēpere**, crawl
lacerta *or* **-us**, lizard
rāna, frog
būfō, toad
vermis, worm
testūdō, tortoise

21.9 insects

apis, bee; **fūcus**, drone; **exāmen**, swarm

mel, honey; *adj.* **mellitus**
favus, honeycomb
cēra, wax; *adj.* **cēreus**
acūleus, sting; **pungere, compungere**, sting;
noun **pūnctum**
alvārium, alveus, cavea, beehive
vespa, wasp
susurrāre, buzz, hum
musca, fly
crābrō, hornet
asīlus, oestrus, gadfly
arānea, spider
pāpiliō, butterfly, moth
formīca, ant
cicāda, tree-cricket
tīnea, moth, bookworm
hirūdō, leech

22 PLANTS

22.1

arbor, tree; **arbustus**, planted with trees;
arbustum, plantation, orchard
trichila, arbour
truncus, stīpes, trunk; **rāmus**, branch; **virga**,
 twig, rod; *diminutive* **virgula**
stirps, trunk (with roots), stem; *adv.* **stirpitus**,
 root and branch
planta, shoot, twig, cutting
līgna (P), (fire)wood
sarmenta (P), twigs, brushwood
clāvicula, tendril
rōbur, hardwood; **māteria**, timber
pālus, sublica, stake
succīdere, fell; **caedere**, fell, lop; **frondātor**,
 pruner of trees; **scindere**, split; **dolāre**, hew
cortex, bark
spīna, thorn; *adj.* **spīnōsus**
rādix, root; **rādicēs agere**, strike root;
arborēs ab rādicibus subruere, uproot;
adv. **rādicitus**, root and all
culmus, stalk (of corn)
folium, leaf; **frōns**, leaf, leafy branch, foliage;
 garland of leaves; **coma**, foliage
sūcus, sap

22.2

silva, forest; *adj.* **silvestris**
nemus, wood
virgulta (P), thicket, copse, bush
lūcus, grove (sacred to a deity); *poet.*, wood
saltus, glen; *adj.* **saltuōsus**

fāgus, beech; *adjs.* **fāgineus, fāginus**
laurus, laurea, laurel; **laureātus**, crowned
 with laurel
palma, palm-tree; **palmētum**, palm grove;
palmōsus, rich in palms
cedrus, cedar
taxus, yew-tree
pīnus, pine; **pīnētum**, pine wood; *adj.* **pīneus**
picea, pitch-pine
quercus, oak; **querquētum**, oak wood; **glāns**,
 acorn; **rōbustus**, of oak
aesculus, Italian oak
cupressus, cypress
fraxinus, ash; *adj.* **fraxineus**
ōrnus, mountain ash
platanus, plane-tree
castānea, chestnut-tree
alnus, alder
larix, larch
salix, willow; **salictum**, plantation of willows
acer, maple
tilia, lime-tree
ulmus, elm
īlex, holm-oak
pōpulus, poplar
abiēs, silver fir
arbutus, wild strawberry-tree
murra, myrrh tree
iūniperus, juniper tree
buxus, box-tree; **buxum**, wood of box-trees
corulus, hazel-shrub
veprēs, thorn-bush, bramble
sentis, briar
vīmen, osier
genista, broom
hedera, ivy
harundō, reed
iuncus, rush; **scirpus**, rush, bulrush; **ulva**,
 sedge
fungus, mushroom
alga, seaweed
muscus, moss; *adj.* **muscōsus**
viscum, mistletoe

22.3

hortus, garden; *dimin.* **hortulus**
saepēs, fence; **saepīre**, fence, hedge in
herba, grāmen, grass, herb; *adj.* **herbidus**
caespes, turf, sod
gemma, germen, bud; *verb* **gemma**
flōs, flower; *diminutive* **flōsculus**; **flōrēre**, be
 in flower; **efflōrēscere**, bloom, flourish;
adjs. **flōrēns, flōridus**
corōna, sēta (P), garland, wreath

rosa, rose, rose-tree, roses; **rosarium**,
rosētum, rosary
lilium, lily
viola, violet; **violarium**, bed of violets
amāracus, marjoram
amaranthus, amaranth
caltha, marigold
rūta, rue
thymum *or* **-us**, thyme
serpullum, wild thyme
crocum *or* **-us**, saffron
narcissus, narcissus
myrtus, myrtle-tree; **myrtētum**, myrtle grove;
adj. **myrteus**
papāver, poppy
lupīnus, lupin
cicūta, hemlock
carduus, thistle

22.4 fruit-trees

frūctus, fruit; *frūctum ēdere*, yield f.; f.
tempestivus, ripe f.; *adj.* **frūctuosus**,
fruitful
frūgēs, fruits, field produce; f. *fundere*,
bring forth f.; *adj.* **frūgifer**, fruitful
fertilis, **fēcundus**, fruitful; *nouns* **fertilitās**,
fēcunditās
mātūrus, ripe; *noun* **mātūritās**; *verb*
mātūrāre, **mātūrēscere**
sēmen, seed; **germen**, germ
pōmum, fruit, fruit-tree
mālum, fruit (e.g. peach, orange)
pōmārium, orchard
mālus, apple-tree; **mālum**, apple
pirus, pear-tree; **pirum**, pear
prūnus, plum-tree; **prūnum**, plum
cerasus, cherry-tree; **cerasum**, cherry
ficus, fig-tree, fig
mōrus, mulberry-tree; **mōrum**, mulberry
amygdala, almond tree
amygdalum, almond

22.5

vītis, **vīnea**, vine; **ūva**, grape, bunch of grapes;
pampinus, tendril or leaf of vine
vīnea, **vīnētum**, vineyard; **vīnum**, wine, *see*
29.8; **vīndēmia**, vintage; **vīndēmiātor**,
vintager; **vīnitor**, vinedresser
olīva, olive, olive-tree; **olīvētum**, olive
plantation; **oleum**, olive oil; *adj.* **oleārius**
nux, nut
frāgum, strawberry

22.6

olus, vegetable
legūmen, leguminous plant
lēns, lentil
caulis, **crambē**, cabbage
bēta, beet
faba, bean
cucumis, cucumber
bulbus, **cēpa**, onion
ālium, garlic
apium, parsley, celery

23 MINERALS

metallum, metal
aurum, gold; *adjs.* **aureus**, **aurātus**; *verbs*
aurāre, **inaurāre**; **aurifex**, goldsmith
argentum, silver; *adj.* **argenteus**
ferrum, iron; *adj.* **ferreus**
chalybs, steel; *adj.* **chalybēius**
rōbīgō, **ferrūgō**, rust
aes, bronze, copper; *adjs.* **aēnus**, *later* **aēneus**,
aerātus
aerūgō, verdigris
orīchalcum, brass
plumbum, lead; *adj.* **plumbeus**
plumbum album, tin
lapis, **saxum**, stone; *diminutive* **lapillus**; *adj.*
lapideus
lapicīda, mason; **lapicīdīnae**, quarry
caementum, stone rough from the quarry;
quadrātum saxum, hewn stone
metallum, mine, quarry
aerāria, mine
gemma, *poet.* **lapis**, precious stone, gem, jewel
cōs, any hard stone, flint
calculus, pebble
marmor, marble; *adj.* **marmoreus**; *marmor or*
signum marmoreum, marble statue
statua, statue; *statuam statuere*, erect a s.
ars fingendī, sculpture; **fictor**, sculptor
scalpere, **sculpere**, **exsculpere**, carve; *ē saxō*
sculptus, carved in stone
onyx, onyx
carbō, coal
sulpur, sulphur
calx, **crēta**, chalk
argilla, (potter's) clay; **rota**, (potter's) wheel
figulus, potter; **fictilis**, earthen, of clay
vitrum, glass; *adj.* **vitreus**

24-27 MAN

24.1

genus hominum *or hūmānum, or gēns hūmāna, or hominēs*, mankind
homō, man (not animal); *diminutives homunciō, homunculus*
hūmānus, human; *noun hūmānitās*, human nature
mortālis, human being; *as adj.* mortal, human
post hominēs nātōs, since men have lived
quī nunc sunt hominēs, the present generation
vir, man (not woman); *adj.* **virīlis**; **virītim**, singly, individually; **virtūs**, manliness
fēmina, woman; *diminutive fēmella*; *adj.* **fēmineus**
mulier, woman; *diminutive muliercula*; *adj.* **muliebris**

q.v. name, 24.6

24.2 ages of man

extrēmae (exāctae) aetātis homō, a man advanced (far advanced) in years
prōvectā aetāte, at an advanced age
grandis, grandis nātū, aged man
senex, old man; *adj.* **senīlis**; *verb* **senēscere**; **senectūs, aetās senēscēns**, old age
anus, old woman; *adj.* **anīlis**
omnēs aetātis superiōris, all older men
senior, elderly man
paulum aetate prōgressus, become rather older; **prōgrediente aetate**, with advancing years
adulta aetās, maturity
iam adultus, one in mature life
aetās iam corrōborāta, aetātēs cōfirmātae, years of discretion
iuvenis, man or woman in prime of life; **iuventūs, flōs aetātis**, prime of life
in suam tūtēlam venīre, come of age
togam virīlem (or pūram) sūmere, assume the garb of manhood
pūbēs, grown up, adult; *as noun*, youth, young man; *verb* **pūbēscere**
adolēscēns, youth, maid; *admodum a.*, in quite early manhood; *noun* **adolēscēntia**
adolēscere, grow up
virgō, maiden; *adj.* **virginālis**, *poet.* **virgineus**
impūbēs, under age, youthful
adolēscētulus, youngster

aetātula, tender age, youthful age
ex puerīs excessit, has ceased to be a child
liberī, nātī, children (in relation to parents); **liberōs suscipere, tollere**, acknowledge, bring up children
puerī, children (generally)
puer, boy; *diminutive puerulus*; **pueritia**, boyhood; **ā puerō, ā puerīs, ā pueritiā**, from boyhood; **puerīlis**, boyish, childish
puella, girl; *diminutive puellula*
parvī, young children; **ā parvīs**, from childhood
cūnābula, cradle
crepundia, rattle

24.3 relationship

origō, source, descent, progenitor; **originem dūcere or trahere ab Ab**, trace one's descent from
genus, prōsāpia, race, stock; family
māiōrēs, patrēs, ancestors, forbears
avus, atavus, ancestor
posterī, posteritās, poet. nepōtēs, posterity, descendants
prōgnātus, ortus, descended; *noun* **prōgnātus**, descendant, child
subolēs, progeny, offspring, descendant
saeculum, generation
cōgnātus, coniūctus sanguine, cōnsanguineus, blood relation, connected (by birth); *nouns* **cōgnātiō, cōnsanguinitās**
āgnātus, related on the father's side; *noun* **āgnātiō**
propinquus, necessārius, relation, kinsman; **Mārci necessārius et propinquus**, a near relation of M.; **propinquitās**, relationship
atavus, great-great-great-grandfather
abavus, great-great-grandfather
proavus, great-grandfather; **proavia**, great-grandmother
pronepōs, great-grandson; **proneptis**, great-granddaughter
avus, grandfather; **avia**, grandmother
nepōs, grandson; **neptis**, granddaughter
mātertera, mother's sister
frātris (sororis) filius, filia, nephew, niece
(frāter, soror) patruēlis, cousin (child of father's brother or sister)
sobrīnus, cōnsobrīnus, -a, cousin (child of mother's brother or sister)
alumnus, foster-son; **alumna**, foster-daughter
parēs, parent; *P also* grandparents

pater, genitor, father; *vestigiiis patris ingredi*, follow in father's footsteps; *adj. paternus, patrius*, paternal
māter, genetrīx (*poet. and late*), mother; *diminutive mātercula*; *adj. māternus*
mātrōna, married woman, mother
vitricus, stepfather; **noverca**, stepmother
filius, nātus, son
filia, nāta, daughter
patre certō (*opposite nullō*) **nāscī**, be a legitimate child
prīvīgnus, -a, stepson, stepdaughter
frāter, brother; *adj. frāternus*
soror, sister; *adj. sorōrius*
germānus, of brothers and sisters who have the same parents, e.g. *g. frāter*
geminus, gemellus (*poet.*), twin
patruus, father's brother
avunculus, mother's brother
amita, father's sister

24.4 marriage

rēs uxōria, matrimony, wedlock
caelebs, unmarried, single
procus, suitor
spōnsus, -a, betrothed man or woman
filiam Dpn dēspondēre, promise one's daughter in marriage to
condiciō, match, alliance
mātrimōnium, marriage; in *m. dare*, in *m. or in mātrimōniō collocāre*, give in *m.*; in *m. dūcere Dēliam*, *or simply dūcere D.*, take D. to wife
cōnūbium, coniugium, wedlock
nūbere D, marry (a man); *noun nūptiae*, wedding; **nūpta**, bride, wife; **prōnuba**, bridesmaid
innūbere, marry into (a family)
ēnūbere, marry out of one's rank or town
coēemptiō, a form of mock marriage
dōs, dowry
vir, marītus, husband
coniūnx, wife, *sometimes* husband
uxor, wife
prōgeniēs, prōlēs (*poet.*), offspring

24.5 relations by marriage

affinis, related by marriage; *noun affinis*, relation by marriage; **affinitās**; *affinitāte coniūctus*, related by marriage
socer, father-in-law
socrus, mother-in-law
nurus, daughter-in-law

sorōris marītus, brother-in-law

repudiāre, ā mātrimōniō dīmittere, divorce; *noun repudium*, (compulsory) divorce
nūntium uxōrī remittere, send a letter of divorce
dīvortium, separation (by consent)
clāvēs adimere uxōrī, separate from one's wife
istam suās rēs sibi habēre iussit, he divorced her

vidua, widow; **vir viduus**, widower
orbis, bereaved, fatherless, orphan, childless; **orbitās**, childlessness; **orbāre**, deprive of parents or children
pupillus, orphan, minor; *as noun pupillus, pupilla*, ward
superesse, survive; **superstes**, surviving

24.6 name

nōmen, name, designation; *Dpn n. impōnere*, give a n.; *ex Abtg n. capere, invenire or trahere*, get, derive a n. from; *verb nōmināre; nōminātim*, by name; **nōminātiō**, nomination
cōgnōminis, having the same name
praenōmen, first name (like our "Christian name"); **cōgnōmen**, third name; *in Mārcus Tullius Cicerō, Mārcus is the praenōmen, Cicerō the cōgnōmen*
nūncupāre, name, call (by name)
titulus, title; *ūsūrpāre titulum*, assume a t.; *quī Sapiēns ūsūrpātur*, is called S.
dēnotāre, dēsīgnāre, designate, specify; *noun dēsīgnātiō*

24.7 mark, sign

nota, index, mark, sign; **notāre**, mark, indicate
signum, mark, token; **sīgnificāre**, indicate; **sīgnificātiō**, sign, indication
specimen, sign, token

25.1 household

familia, domus, household; *adj. familiāris*, belonging to h.; **domesticus**, belonging to one's family or household; *domesticus*

ūsus et cōnsuētūdō, family life;
domesticī, members of a family
ad focum sedēre, be in the midst of one's family
paterfamiliās, head of family; **māterfamiliās**, mistress of house
patria potestās, power of father over children; *sevērū imperium in suis exercet*, he is a strict father and master
ēmancipāre, free from "patria potestās"; *noun* **ēmancipatiō**
dominus, erus, master
domina, era, mistress
suōrum dēsiderium, home-sickness
ad suum larem familiārem redire, return home
patrōnus, cliēs, *The cliēs (client, follower) was a plebeian, freedman or foreigner who enjoyed the favour and protection of the patrōnus (patron, defender, advocate) whom he had chosen and to whom he rendered minor services.*

25.2 servants

ātriēnsis, overseer of house, steward
minister, famulus, servant
ministra, famula, ancilla, maid
pedisequus, pedisequa, attendant
iānitor, door-keeper
coquus, cook
prōmus, slave who distributed food to household
condus, slave in charge of stores
paedagōgus, slave in charge of children, tutor
servus ā manū, secretary
vīlicus, steward, bailiff
servīre Dpn, serve, be a servant of

q.v. slavery, 33.7

q.v. messenger, 48.33

25.3 nation

nātiō, nation
populus, nation, people; *secundō populō (Actg facere)*, with the consent of the people; *Populus Rōmānus Quirītēsque*, official title of Roman people; *Senātus Populusque Rōmānus (SPQR)*; *adj.* **populāris**; *as noun* countryman, fellow-countryman
gēns, people, race, clan

gentilis, fellow-clansman
stirps, stock, breed
genus, race
tribus, tribe, each consisting of ten cūriae; *adv.* **tribūtīm**, by tribes
cūria, ward, each consisting of ten gentēs; *adv.* **cūriātīm**, by wards
aboriginēs, early inhabitants, ancestors of the Romans
vernāculus, native, Roman
finitimī, neighbours
aliēnus, foreign; **aliēnigena**, foreigner, alien

25.4 gatherings

coetus, grex, globus, caterva, company, crowd
frequentia, crowd, throng
multitūdō, turba, crowd, throng, mob
chorus, band, company

q.v. crowded, 20.1

concilium, cōnsilium, assembly, meeting, council
conventus, cōntiō, meeting
corōna, crowd, assembly (espec. judicial)
congregārī, crowd (*intr.*), assemble
circulārī, gather in groups
congressiō, congressus, meeting, intercourse
plēbs or plēbēs, vulgus, common people

25.5 social life

invītāre, invite, entertain; *Acpn domum suam i. . .*, invite to one's house; *noun* **invītātiō**
vīsere, invīsere, *Acpn or domum Gpn*, **convenīre Acpn**, visit
salūtāre, visit, call on, pay a (ceremonial) call; receive visitors; **salūtātiō**, visit
frequentāre domum Gpn, frequent, visit frequently
intervīsere, visit occasionally
hospes, (hereditary) friend; host, guest; *hospitēs accipere or recipere*, have as guests; *adj.* **hospitālis**; **hospitium, hospitālitās**, hospitality, (hereditary) friendship; *h. facere (or iungere) cum Abpn*, become guest and friend of; **apud Acpn esse or commorārī**, be paying a visit to, staying with; *noun* **commorātiō**
advena, hospes, stranger

cōnsuētūdō, social intercourse, companionship, acquaintance
convictiō, **convictus**, social intercourse, companionship, acquaintance
amīcus, **amīca**, friend; *praestā tē amīcum*, prove a true friend; *Mārcum amīcōrum in numerō habeō*, *Mārcum amīcum or prō amīcō habeō*, *amīcō ūtor Mārcō*, enjoy the friendship of M.
amīcītia, friendship
concors, harmonious; **concordia**, union, harmony; **concordāre**, agree
favēre Dpn, be a friend to
cōnsentīre cum Abpn dē Abtg, agree with; *nouns cōnsēnsiō*, **cōnsēnsus**
familiāris, friend; **familiāritās**, intimacy, friendship
intimus, close friend
socius, companion, associate; **societās**, fellowship, society; *vītae s.*, social life; *societātem cum Abpn inīre*, enter into partnership with
necessārius, friend; **comes**, **sodālis**, comrade; **sodālitās**, **necessitās**, **necessitūdō**, **coniūctiō**, friendship, intimacy; *amīcītiae necessitūdīnēs*, ties, bonds of friendship; *(homō) summā sodālitāte*, with a wide circle of friends
grātia, favour, regard; *apud tē grātiām ineō*, win your favour
fautor, **fautrix**, patron(ess), favourer
coniūctus, friendly, intimate
collēga, colleague, companion
circulus, company (for social intercourse)
collēgium, society, company, fraternity
sodālitās, society, club
cōnsors, partner, colleague, comrade; **cōnsortium**, fellowship

aemulus, **aemula**, **rīvālis**, rival; *verb aemulārī*; *noun rīvālitās*
competītor, rival
certātīm, with rivalry
discordia, discord; *discordiās sēdāre*, remove d.; *adj. discors*
discidium, discord
rīxa, quarrel, brawl; *verb rīxārī*
iūrgium, dispute (among friends); *verb iūrgāre*
contentiō, **concertātiō**, **contrōversia**, dispute, contention; *verb concertāre*

lis, dispute (among adversaries), general and legal
altercārī, quarrel; **altercātiō**, (violent) quarrel
dēcertāre, dispute
simultās, strained relations, enmity
obsistere, **obstāre**, oppose; **resistere**, resist
subigere, reduce to submission
īnfēnsus, **inimīcus**, hostile; *as noun* (private) enemy; **inimīcītia** (*P*), enmity
pūgnāx, quarrelsome
aliēnus, averse, unfriendly; **aliēnātiō**, dislike
implācābilis, irreconcilable
tēcum in grātiām redeō, am reconciled with you; **amīcitām dē integrō reconciliāre**, restore friendship; *nouns reconciliātiō*, **reconciliātor**
amīcītiām cum Abpn conciliāre, win someone over; *noun conciliātiō*
Acpn or animum Gpn Dpn reconciliāre, *Acpn in grātiām cum Abpn redūcere*, *Acpn Dpn plācāre*, reconcile A with B

patrōnus, patron
cliēns, client

25.6 commotion, tumult

turba, uproar, disorder; **turbulentus**, restless, confused; **turbāre**, disturb, throw into confusion, agitate
tumultus, uproar, disturbance; **tumultuōsus**, full of commotion, disturbed
mōtus populī, unrest
procellae, commotion, tumult

26 BODY

26.1

corpus, body; *diminutive corpusculum*; *adj. corporeus*
cadāver, dead body, corpse
statūra, height or size of body
figūra, **fōrma**, figure
cutis, skin
callum, hard, thick skin; **ocallēscere**, get thick-skinned
sūdāre, sweat; *noun sūdor*
ōs, bone; *adj. osseus*; **medulla**, marrow
crīnis, hair (*generally*); *adjs. crīnālis*, **crīnītus**; **villus**, shaggy hair; **pilus**, single hair

carō, flesh, meat
torus, nervus, muscle
vēna, vein; **artēria**, artery
sanguis, blood; **cruror**, gore, blood(shed); *adj.*
cruentus; *verb* **cruentāre**, stain with b.
corporis habitus, personal appearance, build
gestus, bearing, posture, gesture
sē iactāre, make gestures
grandis, prōcērus, tall; *noun* **prōcēritās**
brevis, short
pinguis, plp. obēsus, fat, stout; **pinguēscere**,
grow fat
macer, thin, lean; *noun* **maciēs**
gracilis, slender, slim, lean; *noun* **gracilitās**
tenuis, thin; *noun* **tenuitās**

26.2 head, face

head

caput, head; *c.* **dēmittere**, hang, bow one's
head
calva, skull
vertex, top of head
cerebrum, brain
nūtāre, nod; *noun* **nūtus**

hair

capillus (*P rare*), **coma or comae**, hair;
comāns, comōsus, hairy
pectere, comb; *noun* **pecten**
cōmere, comb, arrange, dress (hair)
hirsūtus, shaggy
capillum compōnere, do one's hair
intōnsus, unshorn, with long hair
calamistrum, curling-irons
crispus, calamistrātus, curled; *verb* **crispāre**
cincinnus, (artificial) curl
calvus, bald; *noun* **calvitium**
cānus (*poet.*), greyhaired, hoary; **cānī** (*sc.*
capillī), grey hair
barba, beard; **mentum**, beard (on chin);
diminutive **barbula**; **barbātus**, bearded;
imberbis, beardless
tondēre, clip, trim, shave; **tōnsor**, barber;
tōnstrīna, barber's shop
rādere, shave; **novācula**, razor

face

faciēs, ōs, face, countenance; *nōsse* *Acpn* *dē*
faciē, know one by sight
vultus, face, mien, expression, features
color, complexion; *c.* **albus**, fair *c.*
frōns, forehead, brow; *frontem* *contrahere*,
knit the brows
rūga, wrinkle; *adj.* **rūgōsus**

tempora *P*, temples
supercilium, eyebrow
palpebra, eyelid
oculus, poet. lūmen, eye; **pūpula**, pupil
lacrima, tear; *lacrimās* *commovēre*, cause
tears; *lacrimās* *effundere*, shed t.; *vim*
lacrimārum *profundere*, shed a flood of t.;
flēre, lacrimāre, weep; *noun* **flētus**;
reprimere *flētum*, check tears; *adj.*
flēbilis; plōrāre, weep aloud, wail
caecus, oculīs captus, blind; **caecitās**,
blindness; **caecāre**, blind
luscus, one-eyed
oculī perversī, squinting eyes
strabō, one who squints; *also* *adj.*
paetus, having a cast in the eye; *diminutive*
paetulus

q.v. sight, 14

auris, ear
surdus, auribus captus, deaf; **obsurdēscere**,
grow deaf
surdus idemque mūtus, deaf mute

q.v. sound, 13

nāsus, nose
nāris, nostril; *P* **nārēs**, nose
silus, snub-nosed
olfacere, smell

q.v. smell, 12.3

corrūgāre nārēs, turn up the nose
sē ēmungere or ēmungi, blow one's nose
sternuere, sneeze
gena, cheek; **bucca**, cheek (puffed out); *both*
usu. P.
rubēre, ērubēscere, blush; *noun* **rubor**;
pallēscere, expallēscere, grow pale;
pallēre, be or grow pale; *noun* **pallor**; *adj.*
pallidus, pale
fūcus, rouge
crēta, face powder

mouth

ōs, mouth
rictum, rictus, (open) mouth
hiāre, gape; **hiātus**, open mouth
palātum, palate
faucēs, gula, guttur, throat, gullet

sorbēre, absorbēre, suck in, swallow
lābrum, lip
ridēre, laugh; *noun* **rīsus**; *rīsūs ēdere*, laugh; *rīsum movēre or commovēre or concitāre*, raise laughter; *rīsum rumpere*, check laughter; *adj.* **rīdīculus**; **subrīdēre**, smile; **arrīdēre**, smile upon; **cachinnāre**, laugh aloud; *noun* **cachinnus**, loud laugh, guffaw
sāvium or suāvium (*early*), **ōsculum, bāsium** (*poet.*), kiss; **dare sāvium, s(u)āviārī, ōsculārī, bāsiāre**, kiss
ōscitāre, yawn
lingua, tongue; **lambere**, lick

q.v. taste, 12.4

dēns, tooth; **mordēre**, bite; *noun* **morsus**; *adj.* **mordāx**; **rōdere**, gnaw; **mandāre**, chew, devour

q.v. voice, speech, 41

mentum, chin

26.3 trunk, limbs

collum, cervicēs (*P*), neck
iugulum, collarbone; throat
gurguliō, windpipe
pectus, mamma, breast; **sinus**, bosom
spīna, backbone
costa, rib
umerus, shoulder
dorsum, dorsus, tergum, back
lumbus, loin
gremium, lap

internal organs

viscera (*P*), internal organs
intestīnum, intestine
cor, heart
artēria, windpipe
pulmō, lung; **spīrāre, respīrāre**, breathe;
anima, spīritus, hālitus, breath; *spīritum dūcere*, draw b.; **suspīrāre**, breathe deeply, sigh; **respīrātiō**, taking breath; **suspīrium**, sigh; **anhēlāre**, pant; *noun* **anhēlitus**;
exanimārī, lose breath
venter, abdōmen, alvus, paunch
īlia, groin
stomachus, gullet, windpipe, stomach
praecordia, diaphragm; stomach

iecur, liver
rēnēs, kidneys

limbs

artūs (*P*), **membrum**, limb
lacertus, arm, upper arm
bracchium, arm, forearm
bracchia circumdare or inicere or implicāre collō, or amplectī or complectī, embrace; *noun* **complexus**
ulna, elbow; *poet.* arm
cubitum, elbow

hand

manus, hand
tractāre, handle; *noun* **tractātiō**; *adj.* **tractābilis**
plaudere, clap the hands
dexter, right; *dextram tendere, porrigere*, offer one's hand
sinister, laevus (*poet.*), left; *noun* **sinistra, laeva**, left hand
palma, palm, *poet.* hand
manūs supīnae, hands with palm upward (as in prayer)
pūgnus, fist; **pūgnīs certāre**, box
digitus, finger; **pollex**, thumb
concrepāre digitīs, snap the fingers
ānulus, ring
unguis, nail

leg

femur, thigh; **crūs**, leg, shin; **genū**, knee;
tībia, shinbone; **tālus**, ankle; **pēs**, foot
prōterere, trample on
gradus, passus, step, pace
vestīgium, footstep, footprint, sole of foot;
Gpn *vestigia persequī*, follow in f. of
calx, heel; *calce petere*, kick
planta, sole of foot
claudus, lame, crippled; *verbs* **claudēre, claudicāre**, limp

q.v. walk, 4.4

26.4 health

salūs, welfare; *adj.* **salūber or -bris, salūtāris**, healthful, wholesome; *noun* **salūbritās**
valēre, be well, in good health; *noun* **valētūdō**, health; *v.* *integra*, good health; *valētūdīnī cōnsulere*, take care of oneself; *valētūdīne bonā ūtī*, enjoy good health

sibi parcere, be careful of one's health
sānus, valēns, validus, healthy; *noun* **sānitās**;
 incorruptā sānitāte esse, be in
 thoroughly sound health
vigēre, virēre, flourish, be strong; *nouns*
vigor, viriditās
integer, sound, in full vigor; *noun* **integritās**
rōbur, strength; *adj.* **rōbustus**
firmus, validus, valēns, virīlis, strong,
 vigorous; *noun* **firmitās**; *verb* **firmāre**;
dūrus, (*poet.*) hardy, vigorous; *noun* **dūritia**

26.5 sickness

gravitās valētūdinis *or* **valētūdō**, *or* **aegra** *or*
infirma valētūdō, ill-health **valētūdinem**
 āmittere, fall ill; **valētūdinem tenuissimā**
 esse, be very weak; **valētūdinem** (*or*
 morbum) **excūsāre**, plead ill-health as an
 excuse; **valētūdinis excūsātiōne ūtī**,
 avail oneself of the excuse of ill-health
graviter sē habēre, feel unwell
aeger, aegrōtus, sick, ill, diseased; **aegrum**
 simulāre, pretend to be ill, malingering; *verb*
aegrōtāre; *nouns* **aegritūdō** (*usu.* of mind),
aegrōtātiō
imbēcillus, dēbilis, infirmus, invalidus,
 feeble, weak; *nouns* **imbēcillitās, dēbilitās**,
morbū, illness, disease, ailment; **morbō**
 affici *or* implicārī, in morbum cadere
or incidere *or* incurrere, fall ill
morbō impeditus, stricken by illness
insānābilis, incurable
dēbilitāre, lame, maim, weaken
senium, feebleness (of old age)
vitium corporis, bodily defect
dolor, pain; *verb* **dolēre**, feel pain
afflictātiō, torment, pain
gravēdō, cold (in the head), catarrh
pītuīta, cold
tussis, cough; *verb* **tussīre**
febris, fever; **febrim nancīscī**, catch a f.;
febrīcula, slight fever
podagra, gout
tremere, horrēre, horrēscere, contremīscere
 (e.g. omnibus artubus), **perhorrēscere**
 (e.g. tōtō corpore), tremble, shudder; *noun*
tremor; *adj.* **tremulus, plp.**
obtorpēscere, grow torpid, lose feeling
torpēre, be stiff, numb
tumēre, be swollen
dolor artuum, gout
pēs luxus, sprained foot
mancus, decrepit, infirm
ulcus, vomica, ulcer, sore

q.v. deaf, blind, 26.2

pestilentia, pestis, plague
pestilēns (locus), infected, unhealthy
contāgiō, infection
tābēs, wasting, consumption, plague; *verbs*
tābēscere, perīre, waste away, perish
vulnus, wound; v. **accipere** *or* **sustinēre**,
 be wounded; v. **obligāre**, bandage w.; v.
inferre, *or* **vulnerāre**, wound; **saucius**,
 wounded; *verb* **saucīre**; **cōfectus**, disabled,
 exhausted
cicātrīx, scar
mortifer, deadly, causing death

q.v. poison, 47.2

26.6 medical treatment

ars medendī, medicīna, practice of medicine;
medicīnam exercēre, profitērī, practise as
 a doctor
cūrāre, sārāre, medērī, heal, cure, restore to
 health; *adj.* **sārābilis**, curable
subvenīre, relieve, heal, remedy (e.g.
 gravēdinī)
medicus, doctor
pharmacopōla, quack
medicāmentum, medicāmen, medicīna,
remedium, medicine, remedy; **adhibēre**
medicīnam aegrōtō, give medicine to the
 patient
mulcēre, soothe
recreārī *or* **convalescere ex morbō** (*or*
vulnere), **sē reficere**, recover (from illness)

26.7 sanity, madness

in potestāte mentis esse, be of sound mind;
exīre ex potestāte (*sc.* **mentis**), become
 insane
compos mentis, sane
ad sārītātem revertī, recover one's senses
furor, insānia, vēsānia, vēcordia, dēmēntia,
rabiēs, madness
insānus, male sānus, vēsānus, vēcors,
fānaticus, furiōsus, dēmēns, captus mente,
rabidus, rabiōsus, cerrītus, mad, raving
insānīre, dēlīrāre, furere, be out of one's
 mind, rave, be mad; *noun* **dēlīrātiō**

26.8 tear to pieces, maim

lacerāre, mangle, mutilate; *noun* **lacerātiō**
laniāre, **dilaniāre**, **excarnificāre**, tear to pieces; *noun* **laniātus**
mutilus, maimed; *verb* **mutilāre**
truncus, mutilated

27.1 clothing

vestītus, (*late*) **habitus**, dress, clothing
vestis, **cultus**, clothing, clothes, attire
ōrnātus, attire, apparel
vestīmentum, article of clothing, (*P*) clothing
vestīre, dress, clothe
induere (*usually refl. or pass.*), clothe, put on
amicire, throw or wrap round (of outer garments)
cōmptus, elegant, adorned
mundus, neat, elegant; *noun* **munditia**
nitidus, spruce, trim; *noun* **nitior**, elegance
exuere, strip; *vestem pōnere*, undress
nūdus, naked, bare; *verb* **nūdāre**, **dēnūdāre**, strip, bare

lāna, wool
linteum, linen; *adj.* **linteus**
sēricus, silk (*adj.*); **sērica**, silk garments or silks
textile, cloth, stuff
centō, piece of cloth, rag, patchwork
pannus, piece of cloth, rag; **pannōsus**, tattered

27.2 articles of clothing, etc.

toga, toga (man's gown); *t.* **sordida** *or* **pulla**, worn in mourning; *t.* **virilis** *or* **pūra**, garb of manhood; *togam virilem sūmere*, come of age; *t.* **praetexta**, bordered with purple, worn by higher magistrates and free-born children; **togātus**, clad in the toga
amictus, **amiculum**, outer garment
paenula, (travelling) cloak (with hood)
lacerna, (thick) cloak (with hood)
sagum, coarse woollen mantle
tunica, undergarment; *t.* **tālāris**, reaching to ankles; *t.* **manicāta**, with sleeves
manicae, long sleeves of tunica
palla, **stola**, robe (ladies' outer garment)
pallium, (Greek) cloak, shawl
chlamys, (Greek) upper garment, often worn over uniform

fascia, band, fillet
monile, necklace
redimiculum, necklace, chaplet
torquis, necklace
armilla, bracelet
fibula, clasp, buckle
sinus, fold; used as purse
sūdārium, handkerchief
pilleus, cap; *adj.* **pilleātus**
mitra, turban
calceus, shoe, half-boot
caliga, leather shoe (especially of soldiers)
solea, **crepida**, sandal
sūtor, shoemaker

28 TOWN

28.1

urbs, town, city; **Urbs**, Rome; *urbem condere*, *cōstituere*, found a city; *adj.* **urbānus**, of the city, *espec.* Rome; **suburbānus**, near Rome, suburban
cīvis, **urbānus**, inhabitant of a city, town-dweller, citizen
mūnicipium, free town; **mūniceps**, **mūnicipālis homō**, inhabitant of such a town; **mūnicipālis**, municipal, provincial
arx, citadel
oppidum, town (*usu. other than Rome*); *adj.* **oppidānus**, belonging to a (country) town, provincial; *as noun* townsman
colere, **incolere**, **habitāre**, inhabit; *noun* **incola**, **cultor**, inhabitant; **habitāntēs**, inhabitants; *adj.* **habitābilis**, inhabitable
hominum numerō valere, be populous
emporium, market town
vīcus, village; quarter (of town); *dimin.* **vīculus**; **vīcānus**, dwelling in a village
pāgus, district, province, canton
pāgānus, villager, rustic

28.2

moenia, walls (of city or fortress)
mūrus (*usu. P*), wall
pōmērium, space within and without walls of town, kept free from buildings
turris, tower
specula, watch tower
porta, gate; *portam praecūdere*, bar g.
via, road, street; **platea**, **vīcus**, street
angiportum *or* **-us**, alley

forum, public place, market place (*of various kinds*)
spatium, promenade, public place or square;
horti (e.g. *Caesaris*), park, public gardens

sēdēs, domicilium, habitātiō, dwelling-place;
see 29.1

obtinēre, occupy, possess

cōnsidere, settle, establish oneself

commigrāre, remove (to another house or town)

praedium, estate (in town or country), farm

29 HOUSE

29.1 houses

domus, aedēs (*P*), **tēctum**, house; *domus necessāriis rēbus instrūcta*, a well-furnished house; **aediculae**, small house

īnsula, block of tenements

penātēs, home; **foci**, homes

rēgia [**domus**], royal palace, residence

turris, castle, palace

cūria, town hall; **basilica**, public hall (town hall, exchange)

aula, hall, palace; **porticula**, small hall

suburbānum, villa in suburbs

villa, country house, farm; **vīcus**, country seat;

casa, tugurium, cottage, hut; **mapālia** (*P*),

huts, tents; **gurgustium**, hovel, hut

dēversōrium, dēverticulum, hospitium, inn, lodging; *verbs* **dēvertere, dēversārī**, put up

caupōna, inn

sarta tēcta, buildings in good repair

mercēdēs habitātiōnum annuae, rent

domī, at home; **forīs**, out of doors

carēre publicō, remain at home; **in publicō esse**, not to be at home

29.2 structure

aedificāre, build, erect, construct; *nouns*

aedificium, building; **aedificātiō**,

aedificātor

superficiēs, building

exaedificāre, complete the building of

astruere, build on

architectus, architect; *verb* **architectārī**; *noun*

architectūra

fundāmentum, foundation

later, brick

tēctum, roof; ceiling; **sōlārium**, flat roof

tēgula, roofing tile, roof

lacūnar, (panelled) ceiling

solum, floor

pavīmentum, floor, pavement

pinna, pinnacle

fastīgium, gable

columen, gable, column; **columna, pīla**, column, pillar

porticus, collonade, gallery, porch, portico

fornix, vault, arch

pariēs, party-wall; *intrā parietēs*, within four walls *or* by private agreement

faucēs, passage

scālae, staircase; **gradus**, step (of staircase)

contabulātiō, floor, storey

cēnāculum, upper floor

gynaecēum, women's apartments

29.3 entrance

iānuā, (front) door; **valvae**, folding doors; **forēs** (*P*), **ōstium**, door; **posticum**, back-door

pulsāre (**ōstium**), knock (at the door); *iānuam effringere*, burst door open

iānitor, doorkeeper

postis, doorpost; **līmen**, threshold

cardō, hinge

clāvis, key; **repāgulum**, bolt; **claustra**, bar, lock, bolt

aperīre, reserere *plp.*, open; **patēre**, stand open; **claudere, operīre**, shut; **īncludere**, shut in

fenestra, window

lūmināria, shutters

29.4 atrium, etc.

vestībulum, forecourt

tablīnum, office

ātrium, central hall

peristylum, collonade round courtyard

compluvium, skylight

impluvium, basin for rain-water; *also* = compluvium

supellex, furniture

sella, chair, stool; **subsellium, sedile** *plp.*, chair, bench; **scamnum**, stool, bench;

cathedra, armchair

pulvīnar, couch

pulvīnus, cushion; *dimin.* **pulvillus**

arca, chest; money-box

āra, altar

abacus, sideboard

peripetasma, peristrōma, carpet

29.5 dining

trīclīnium, dining-room, dining-couch; in trīclīniō recumbere *or* discumbere, our "sit down for a meal"

mēnsa, table, meal; (mēnsae [D] *or* in convīviō) accubāre, accumbere, cubāre, recline at table

epulae (*P*), dishes, meal; **ferculum**, course

secunda mēnsa, dessert

ientāculum, breakfast; **prandium**, lunch; invitāre ad p., invite to l.; in prandiō accipere *Acpn* ad sē, entertain to l.; *verb* **prandēre**; N.B. **prānsus**, having lunched; **cēna**, dinner; cēnam dare *Dpn*, entertain at table; *verb* **cēnāre**

Acpn **adhibēre epulīs or cēnae, or invitāre ad cēnam**, invite to dinner

convīvium, banquet, dinner-party; c. instruere, get ready a b.; convīviō *or* in c. interesse, attend b.; c. renuere, decline invitation to dinner

convīva, guest

umbra, companion (of important guest)

ministrāre (e.g. pōcula, bibere), serve (at table)

daps, epulum, public dinner, solemn feast; banquet

epulārī, feast

lautus, sumptuous, luxurious

lūxus, lūxuria, luxury; *adj.* **lūxuriōsus**

29.6 kitchen

culīna, kitchen

cella, storeroom; c. penāria, s. for provision; c. oleāria, s. for oil

carnārium, larder

vās, utensil, dish

urna, jar, bucket

coquus, cook; *verb* **coquere**, cook, boil, stew

crūdus, uncooked, raw

torrēre, roast, bake

assum, roast meat, e.g. assum vitulīnum

frīgere, fry

fervēre, boil (*intrans.*)

verū, spit, broach

focus, fire-place

furnus, oven, bakehouse

vatillum, chafing-dish

popīna, cookshop

29.7 food

vīctus, nourishment, diet

alimentum, nūtrimentum, cibus, penus, food; corpus cibō cūrāre, take food; cibum tibi appōnō, set food before you; *adj.* **penārius**

ēscā, solid food; **ēsculentus**, edible

edere, eat; **exedere**, eat up, consume; **vēscī** *Ab*, **vīvere** *Ab*, live on, feed on; **dēvorāre, comedere**, consume, devour; **adedere**, nibble

edāx, devouring, voracious

famēs, hunger; famem dēpellere *or* explēre, satisfy h.; fame perīre *or* ēnecārī *or* consūmī, starve

ēsurīre, hunger

īēiūnus, hungry, fasting; *noun* **īēiūnium**

inedia, fasting (*noun*), starvation

aqua, water; *see* 9.1

satur, sated

gula, appetite, gluttony

ligūrītiō, fondness for dainties

helluārī, guzzle

carō, meat

pānis, bread; **pīstor**, baker

placenta, cake

crūstum, pastry; **crūstulum**, small pastry, confectionery

puls, porridge

sāl, salt

piper, pepper

prōmulsis, savoury as first course

lanx, dish

patella, pan, plate

patina, dish, pan

pēlvis, basin

sportella, sportula, little basket for food; its contents

29.8 drink

pōtiō, drink, beverage

bibere, drink, **pōtare**, drink, tipple; N.B. **pōtus**, *usu.* being drunk (intoxicated), *also* having drunk *and* having been drunk; **pōtus**, drinking; **pōtātiō**, drinking bout; **pōtātor**, toper

propīnāre *Dpn*, drink to

ēbrius, vīnolentus, tipsy; *nouns* **ēbrietās, vīnolentia**; *adj.* **vīnōsus**, given to drink, bibulous
crāpula, intoxication
tēmulentus, drunk
combibō, cōmissātor, compōtor, boon-companion
effundere, pour out
haurīre, drain
sitis, thirst; *sitim explēre*, quench t.; *verb* **sitīre**

puteus, well; *see* 9.2
dōlium, large jar
hydria, ūrceus, jug (for water)
lagoena, jug, flagon
ampulla, flask
lac, milk; *see* 8.3
vīnum, wine; *see* 22.5; *adj.* **vīnārius; vīnārium**, wine-pot
mustum, grape juice, must; **mulsum**, honeyed wine
faex, dregs
acētum, vinegar

cūpa, cask
crātēr, mixing bowl
miscēre, mix, blend
merus, unmixed, pure
pōculum, calix, scyphus, cibōrium, cup, goblet
cyathus, ladle (for wine)
cūpa, cask
cella vīnāria, apothēca, storeroom for wine

29.9 bedroom

cubiculum, bedroom, rest-room
cubīle, lectus, torus, bed, couch; *in lectō iacēre*, lie in bed; *lectō tenērī*, be confined to one's bed
cūnae, cūnābula, cradle
strātum, coverlet, blanket, pillow
strāgula vestis, coverlet
discumbere, lie down
dormītum or cubitum or ad quiētem īre or trādere sē quiētī, ad somnum or ad dormiendum proficīsci, go to bed
sōpīre, cōnsōpīre, lull to sleep, make to sleep; **sōpītus**, asleep

obdormīre, obdormīscere, dormītāre, fall asleep
dormīre, cubāre, quiēscere, sleep

balneum, balneāria, bathroom; **balneae**, public baths; *adj.* **balneārius; balneātor**, bath-keeper
alveus, bathing-tub
piscīna, bathing-pool
lavārī, aquā perfundī, perluī (e.g. *in flūminibus*), bathe
somnus, sleep; *somnō privāre Acpn*, somnum *Dpn* adimere, rob of sleep; *animus somnō relaxātus*, refreshed by s.
excubāre, sleep out of doors
somnium, dream; **somnīre, in somnīs vidēre** *Actg*, dream
expergīsci, awake
excitāre, arouse
vigilāre, be awake, not sleep, be wakeful, keep watch; *v. noctēs*, not to sleep at night;
vigilia, waking, watching
insomnia, sleeplessness; **somnum capere nōn posse**, suffer from insomnia
noctem pervigilāre, stay awake all night

ārea, yard, court
in prōpatulō, in the open court
hortus, garden; *see* 22.3

30 GOVERNMENT

30.1

cīvitās, state; *gubernātiō cīvitātis*, government of the s.
pūblicus, public; *pūblica causa*, affair of the state
rēspūblica, constitution, nation, politics, public life
moderātor, or gubernātor rēipūblīcae, ruler of the state
gubernātiō cīvitātis, government
īnstītūta et lēgēs, lēgēs patriae, the constitution
rempūblicam temperāre lēgibus, govern (a state) by laws
commoda pūblica (P), the interests of the state

sapientia cōstituendae reipublicae, rērum cīvīlium cōgnitiō et prūdentia, statesmanship
sciēns reipublicae gerendae, a clever statesman
dicīō (*SN not in use*), rule, sovereignty, authority
auctōritās, imperium, authority; imperium singulāre, sole a.; auctōritātem interpōnere, assert a.
māiestās, majesty, dignity, sovereignty of the state
dīgnitās, dignity, high rank
nōbilitās, distinction, renown
augustus, majestic, venerable
īnsīgnis, praeclārus, nōbilis, distinguished, famous; **nōbilitāre,** make famous

30.2

status (cīvitātis), form of government
omnium summa rērum, supreme power
imperium, empire; government; supreme power; i. singulāre, autocracy; i. obtinēre *or* tenēre, hold command; *Dpn* summam imperiī permittere, entrust with supreme powers; summam imperiī tenēre, have supreme command; imperiō potiri, gain supreme power; imperiō praesidēre, be president; novis imperiīs studēre, work for a change of government;
imperiosus, mighty; **imperāre,** govern
prīnceps, imperātor, emperor; **imperātrīx,** empress
prīncipātus, supreme command, *later* sovereignty
rēgnum, kingdom; sovereignty; *Dpn* r. dēferre, make king; r. occupāre, be king; r. excipere, succeed to the throne
interrēgnum, interregnum (*with* **interrēx**)
rēx, king; r. fieri, ascend the throne; rēgem reducere, restore k. to throne; rēgem rēgnō spoliāre, dethrone k.; *adjs.* **rēgius, rēgālis;** rēgia potestās, royal power; **rēgāle**
genus cīvitātis, monarchy
rēgīna, queen
vicārius rēgnī, viceroy
rēgulus, chief, chieftain
regere, rule (*intrans.*)
rēgnāre, reign
praeesse *D*, rule over
īnsīgnia rēgia, regalia; **solium,** throne; **scēptrum,** sceptre; **purpura,** royal (crimson) cloak
satelles, lifeguard, attendant, bodyguard

stīpātiō, retinue, suite
tyrannus, tyrant, despot; *adj.* **tyrannicus**
tyrannis, dominātiō, dominātus, tyranny

30.3

senātus, senate; in senātum legere, elect to S.; in senātum venire *or* pervenire, become a senator; ex *or* dē senātū ēicere, dē senātū movēre, senātū prohibēre, remove from the S.; dēsciscere ā senātū, cease to be a senator
decuria, division (one-tenth) of senate
ōrdō senātōrius, Patrēs Cōscriptī, patrēs, the senators
senātor, senator; **tunica lāticlāvia,** senator's robe of state, with broad purple stripes
cūria, senate house
senātum convocāre or cōgere, call a meeting; **senātum mittere or dīmittere,** adjourn meeting
referre ad senātum Actg or dē Abtg, make a motion in the senate
cēnsēre, give an opinion, vote; decree
cernere, decide
sententia, vote; (pedibus) ire in sententiam, vote for a motion
discessiō, division; discessiōnem facere, divide the senate (on a motion)
īnfrequentia senātūs, absence of quorum in senate
dēcernere, ēdicere, decree, decide; *noun*
dēcrētum, decree
senātūs cōsultum or auctōritās, decree of senate

30.4

honor, office, distinction, official dignity; honōrem petere, seek office
status, rank, status (political or civil)
ascendere in summum locum cīvitātis, attain the highest dignity in the state
mūnus, post, function; mūnere fungī, administer, discharge an office
magistrātus, civil office, magistracy; magistrate; in magistrātū esse, manēre, be, remain in office; magistrātum habēre (obtinēre), hold office
potestās, (magisterial) power, authority
dictātor, magister populī, dictator; *adj.* **dictātōrius;** **dictātūra,** dictatorship; dictātūram gerere, be dictator
cōsul, consul; rempublicam cōsulibus permittere, give the consuls unlimited

powers; *Acpn* cōnsulem facere (reficere), elect (re-elect) c.; c. vitiōsus, irregularly elected c.; *adj.* **cōsulāris**; **cōsulātus**, office of c., consulship; cōsulātum petere, adipīscī, obtinēre, inīre; cōsulātū fungī; abīre, sē abdicāre cōsulātū, resign the c.; cōsulātū perāctō, on the completion of his consulship

praetor, praetor; *adj.* **praetōrius**; **praetūra**, praetorship

cēnsor, censor; *adj.* **cēnsōrius**; **cēnsūra**, censorship

aedilis, aedile; *the aedilēs were curulēs or plēbēī*; *adj.* **aedilicius**

quaestor, quaestor; *adj.* **quaestōrius**; **quaestūra**, quaestorship

tribūnus, tribune; *adj.* **tribūnīcius**; **tribūnātus**, tribuneship; *dēpellere Acpn* tribūnātū, drive out of the tribuneship

sella curūlis, official seat (used by consuls, praetors and curule aediles)

tribūnal, platform on which seats of magistrates were placed

accēnsus, **appāritor**, minor state official

stator, magistrate's attendant

lictor, lictor

fascēs, rods and axe

ad rempūblicam accēdere *or* **sē cōferre**, **rempūblicam capessere**, **forum attingere**, enter political life; **dē forō dēcēdere**, abandon political life

privātus, citizen not holding public office

honōribus dēfūctus, one who has held office

30.5 elections

(honōrem) petere, seek office, stand for, be candidate for; **petītor**, candidate; **petitiō**, candidature

(nōmen) profitēri, give in one's name

candidātus, candidate (in "toga candida"); *mē* candidātum cōsulātūs profiteor, declare that I am standing for the consulship

ambitiō, canvassing; *verb* **ambīre**

comitia, public assembly

creāre, elect

cooptāre, co-opt; *noun* **cooptātiō**

suffrāgium, right of voting; vote; voting tablet; *s. ferre*, **suffrāgārī**, give one's vote; *s. inīre*, proceed to vote

refrāgārī, vote against, oppose

tabella, voting tablet

pūctum, vote; *pūcta ferre*, gain votes

manum porrigere, hold up hand (in voting)

diribēre, sort voting tablets; *nouns* **diribitiō**, **diribitor**

renūntiāre, announce result

repulsa, defeat; *repulsam ferre*, be rejected

30.6

cīvis, citizen; *bonus (optimus) c.*, a true patriot; *c. ācerimus*, an ardent patriot; *adjs.* **cīvilis**, **cīvicus**, civil, civic; **cīviliter**, like a good citizen

pietās, **amor in patriam**, patriotism

bene dē rēpūblicā sentīre, be patriotic

populāris, fellow-countryman

peregrīnus, alien (not Roman citizen)

externus, foreign, strange

caput, civil rights, status; *capite sē* dēminuere *or* *dēminuī*, lose civil rights; *capitis dēminūtiō*, loss of civil rights

cīvitās, citizenship; *dōnāre Acpn* cīvitāte, bestow c. on one; *recipere or* *ascribere Acpn* in cīvitātem, admit one to the right of c.; *largīre Dpn* cīvitātem, confer citizenship; *adimere Dpn* cīvitātem, deprive one of c.

a(d)sciscere, admit (as citizen)

in integrum restituere, restore to full rights

ascribere, enrol; **cōscriptus**, on the roll; **cēnsus**, register, burgess roll

nota, brand, stigma, *nota cēnsōria*, note of censure (in censor's list)

relēgāre, banish (without loss of civil rights or property)

exsul, exile; **exsilium**, exile, banishment; *exsiliō afficere*, punish with exile; *in exsilium ēicere*, *exigere*, *expellere*, *pellere*, banish; *in exsilium īre*, *pergere*, *proficiscī*, go into e.; **exsulāre**, be an exile, live in exile; *dē exsiliō revocāre*, *reducere*, recall from e.

ex patriā ēicere, **ā patriā expellere**, **cīvitāte exturbāre**, expel from the country; **ēiectiō**, banishment

prōscribere, outlaw, proscribe; **prōscriptus**, outlaw; **prōscriptiō**, outlawry

solum vertere or mūtāre, go into exile

mūtārī cīvitāte, be banished

extermināre, **interdicere Dpn aquā et ignī**, **cīvitāte or patriā pellere**, banish

30.7

nōbilis, **generōsus**, noble; *nōbili genere* nātus, of noble family

nōbilitās, high birth, aristocracy

clārus, illustrious; **clāritās**, renown
celeber, renowned, famous; *noun* **celebritās**;
verb **celebrāre**
summō locō nātus, of a noble family; **honestō
locō nātus**, of good family
humilibus parentibus *or* **obscurīs māiōribus
nātus** *or* **ortus**, of humble birth
humilitās, obscuritās, humble birth
īgnōbilis, obscure, of low birth; *noun*
īgnōbilitās
sordēs, low social status; **sordidus**, of mean
birth, humble
patricius, patrician; a patrician; **optimās**,
aristocratic; *P*, aristocracy; **optimī civēs**,
optimates; **prīmōrēs** *P*, nobles, patricians;
procerēs, prīmī (or prīncipēs) cīvītātis,
leading men, nobles
bona ratiō, conservative party or attitude
equitēs *P*, **ōrdō equester**, capitalist class
bonī, men of substance, the upper class
assiduus, one who pays tribute (citizen of
upper classes)
homō ingenuus, freeborn man
populārēs *P*, people's party
aura populāris, favour of the masses
plēbs, plēbēs, ōrdō plēbēius, plebeian order,
commons; **plēbēius**, plebeian; **plēbēcula**,
rabble
prōlētārius, proletarian, citizen of lowest
classes
tenuiōrēs, tunicātī, people of the lower classes
aerārius, member of lowest class of citizens
capite cēnsī, assessed as persons merely, not
according to income, but ability to labour
novus homō, homō ā sē ortus, a self-made
man, upstart
factiō, party, class, faction; *adj.* **factiōsus**

30.8 revenue

aerārium, publicum, pecūnia publica,
treasury, exchequer
fiscus, state treasury
vectīgal, tax, toll; *v.* **impōnere**, tax; **exigere**,
claim, exact; **pendere**, pay; **locāre**, farm
out; **dē vectīgālibus eximere**, *or* **levāre
vectīgālī**, exempt from taxation
stipendium, tax (payable in money)
portōrium, duty on imported and exported
goods; **portitor**, custom-house officer
tribūtum, tribute, military tax; *t.* **impōnere**,
impose *t.*; *t.* **cōferre, facere**,
pendere, pay *t.*
immūnis, exempt from taxation; *noun*
immūnitās

agrōs liberāre, free lands from taxation
pūblicānus, tax-collector
manceps, redēptor, contractor
locātiō, contract for right of collecting taxes
redēptiō, farming of the revenue

pūblicāre, make public property, confiscate
prōscribere, publish (a man) as having
forfeited his property, punish with
confiscation, confiscate
addicere bona Gpn in pūblicum, confiscate

30.9 offences against state

iniūriae pūblīcae, offences against the state
in rēpūblicā peccāre, offend against the state
coniūrāre contrā Ac, enter into a conspiracy
against; **coniūrātiō**, plot, conspiracy;
prīncipēs coniūrātiōnis, heads of
conspiracy; *c.* **contrā rempūblicam**;
coniūrātiōnem invēstīgāre, be on the
track of a *c.*; **coniūrātī**, conspirators;
cōnsciūs (scelerum), accomplice
cōnspīrāre, plot together
cōnsēnsiō, coitiō, conspīrātiō, conspiracy
novae rēs, revolution; **novīs rēbus studēre**,
be eager for revolution
tumultus, mōtus, uproar, civil war, sudden
rising, disturbance
sēditiō, mutiny, insurrection, *see* 37.3;
sēditiōsus, factious, disaffected
sēcēdere, secede, revolt; *noun* **sēcēssiō**
dēficere ab Ab, revolt from; **dēfectiō**, revolt,
rebellion
dē occupandō rēgnō mōlīrī, strive to usurp
the government
malī or improbī (cīvēs), unpatriotic citizens
contrā rēgem (rempūblicam) arma sūmere,
be a rebel; **male sentīre**, be disaffected
cīvis impiūs, parricīda patriae, traitor;
parricīdium patriae, treason
perduelliō, treason; **perduelliōnis** *or*
māiestātis reus, traitor
lēx māiestātis, law relating to treason
māiestātem minuere or laedere, be guilty of
high treason; **māiestātis accūsāre**, accuse
of treason; **māiestātis damnāre**, convict of
treason
perduelliōnis iūdicium, trial for treason

31 RELIGION

rēs dīvīnae or sacrae, religion

31.1

rēs dīvīna (also P), worship, sacrifice
religiō, piety; religious scruple; (S or P) religion
sacra (P), worship; s. *facere*, engage in worship; **magister sacrōrum**, high priest
mystēria, secret worship; *adj.* **mysticus**
deus, dīvus, caelestis (*usu. P*), god; **dea, dīva**, goddess
dīvinitās, divinity
ambrosia, food of the gods; **nectar**, drink of the gods
nympha, nymph
superī, gods above
inferī, dwellers below, the dead; **Mānēs**, spirits of the dead; gods of the lower world
dīvīnus, caelestis, divine
immortālis, undying; *noun* **immortālitās**
nūmen, divine power, divine will, deity
sānctus, holy, inviolable; *noun* **sānctitās**;
sacer, sacred, consecrated; accursed
sollemnis, religious
rītus, caerimōnia, sollemne, rite, ceremony
rīte, with proper rites
pompa, solemn or festal procession
sacrum, sacred vessel
capēdō, sacrificial bowl
venerārī, worship; **colere**, worship (by rites);
nouns **venerātiō, cultus**; **adōrāre**, worship, implore
obsecrāre *Ac*, **supplicāre** *D*, implore;
supplex, suppliant
adīre deōs, approach the gods as a suppliant
precārī, invocāre, pray, invoke; **precēs** (P), prayer; *adhibere p. diīs immortālibus*, pray to the gods; **precātiō**, prayer
plācāre, appease
vōtum, prayer
celebrāre, solemnise, keep a festival
pīus, pious, devout; *noun* **pīetās**
religiō, piety, faith; **religiōsus**, pious
fēstus, festal, solemn; *diem fēstum agere or agitāre*, keep holiday
dīēs fāstus, day on which business could be done; **dīēs nefāstus**, day on which no official business could be transacted

vovēre, dēvovēre, vow, dedicate; **vōtum** (*usu. P*), vow, solemn promise; votive offering; *vōta facere or nūcupāre*, make vows; *v. reddere or solvere*, fulfil v.; **vōtīvus**, promised by vow, given in fulfilment of vow; **dēvōtiō**, consecration, vow
sacrāre, cōnsecrāre, dicāre, dēdicāre, dedicate; *noun* **cōnsecrātiō**
inaugurāre, consecrate, e.g. *templum*
mactāre, dedicate (as offering)
profānus, unconsecrated, profane
polluere, desecrate

31.2

cultus deōrum, sacra pūblica, public worship
iūs dīvīnum, religious law
templum, aedēs, fānum, dēlūbrum (*usu. P*), temple, sanctuary
sacellum, sanctuary, chapel
sacrārium, shrine, sanctuary
āra, altar; **tūs, suffimentum**, incense; **libāre**, pour out as an offering; **libāmentum**, libation
simulācrum, imāgō, image, statue
sacerdōtium, priesthood
pontifex, pontiff; **pontificātus**, pontiffship; *adj.* **pontificālis**
sacerdōs, priest, priestess; **flāmen**, priest (of particular deity)
antistes, antistita, high priest(ess), overseer of temple
collēgium, sodālītās, sodālicium, college of priests; **sodālis**, member of such a college
virgō Vestālis, Vestal virgin
sacrificium, sacrifice; *verb* **sacrificāre**;
sacrum facere, perform sacrifice; **hostia, victima**, animal sacrificed, victim; **mactāre, immolāre**, sacrifice, immolate, worship;
lūstrāre, purify (by sacrifice); *noun* **lūstrātiō**; **litāre**, sacrifice under favourable conditions

31.3

sacra prīvāta, household worship
Lār, tutelary deity
Larārium, household shrine
Penātēs (P), household deities
genius, guardian spirit

31.4 impiety; superstition

impius, nefārius, irreligious, ungodly; *nouns*
impietās, neglegentia deōrum, nūllus deōrum metus, irreligion

sacrilegus, sacrilegious, impious; *also noun*

violāre deōs immortalēs, be impious

superstitiō, nimia or prāva or perversa religiō or religiō alone, inānis timor deōrum, superstition; *superstitiōne imbūtus*, steeped in s.; *adj.* **superstitiōsus, religiōsus**

lamia, witch

larvae, lēmūrēs, ghosts

31.5 prophecy

vātēs, prophet, prophetess, seer, bard

sāga, prophetess

augur, diviner, soothsayer; *verb* **augurārī**;

augurium, augurātiō, augury, divination

haruspex, sortilegus, soothsayer

hostia, victim; **exta (n P)**, entrails

auspex, bird seer; *verb* **auspicārī**, take auspices; **auspicium**, auspices, guidance

ōrāculum, oracle

ōmen, prōdigium, mōnstrum, portentum, sign, token, portent; **ōmen dētestārī**, avert an omen

faustus, fēlix, propitious, lucky; **īnfēlix**,

laevus, sinister, unfortunate, unlucky;

dīrus, ill-omened, portentous; **obscēnum**

ōmen, evil omen, portent; **bonīs, secundīs**

avibus, with a good omen; in a happy hour;

opposite **avī malā**; **auspicia secunda**

(īnfēlicia), good (bad) omens

praepes, auspicious (of birds in augury)

praerogātīva, good omen

dīvīnāre, ōminārī, portendere, praecinere,

praenūntiāre, vāticinārī, prophesy; *nouns*

dīvīnātiō, vāticinātiō

praedīcere, foretell; *nouns* **praedictiō, praedictum**

fātidicus, prophesying

obnūntiāre, announce an ill omen

prōcūrāre, avert ill omen by sacrifice; *noun*
prōcūrātiō

praesāgiēns malōrum animus, a (gloomy) foreboding; **praesentīre**, have a foreboding

32 CHANCE; FATE

32.1

fortūna, cāsus, fors, chance, fortune; *lūdibria fortūnae*, playthings of fate; *tēla fortūnae*, shafts of fate; *vulnere fortūnae percussus*, stricken by misfortune; *vaga f.*, fickle f.; *caecus cāsus*, blind chance; *māgnus cāsus*, pure chance; *adj.* **fortuītus**, accidental

forte, fortuītō, cāsū, by chance; *forte ac cāsū*, by mere chance

sors, fātum, lot, fate, destiny

fātālis, destined, fated

sors, lot, decision by lot; *tollere sortēs*, draw lots; **sortīrī**, cast or draw lots; **sortītō**, by lot; **sortītiō**, drawing of lots

sitella, small urn for drawing lots

ālea, die; *āleam iacere*, throw a die

tessera, die (with 6 numbers); *tesserās iacere*

tālus, die (with 4 numbers); *tālīs lūdere*

Venus, best, *and canis*, worst throw of dice

occāsiō, facultās, opportunity

accidere, ēvenīre, happen, turn out; *accidit or ēvenit, ut adessem*, I happened to be present

intervenīre, happen, occur

temeritās, chance, accident

contingere, obtingere, obvenīre, fall to the lot of, befall

quicumque ventī erunt, whatever may happen
eventus, ēventum, prōventus, exitus, result, issue

sic placitum (scil. dīs), such was the dispensation of heaven

32.2 favourable

fēlicitās, prospera (flōrēns, secunda) fortūna, rēs prosperae (secundae), prosperitās, good fortune

rēs flōrentissimae, flourishing circumstances

rēbus ad nostram voluntātem fluentibus, things going as we desire

fēlix, fortunātus, fortunate, lucky, well-off

rēs mihi succēdit (or without rēs), I am successful

successus, good result, success

peropportūnē accidit, ut, it is most fortunate that

ēvādere, turn out, result

omnia prosperē eveniunt, prōcēdunt or succēdunt, all goes well
prōficere, succeed, get on well
pulchrē est mihi, all goes well with me
mihi omnia iūcunda cecidērunt, all has turned out well for me
deōrum beneficiō accidit, ut..., happily, by heaven's favour
cōsiliō deōrum, providentially
auspicātō, at a favourable time

32.3 unfavourable

rēs adversae, fortūna adversa or afflīcta, adversity
extrēmā fortūnā, in greatest distress
calamitās, cāsus, clādēs, fātum, infelicitās, perniciēs, misfortune, disaster; calamitāte percussus, hit by m.; *adj.* **calamitōsus**
fulmina fortūnae, blows of misfortune, calamities
ictus novae calamitātis, blow of a fresh misfortune
sī gravius quid accidat, in case of misfortune
sē fortūna inclināverat, there was a change for the worse
incommodum, unfortunate event; importāre i., cause trouble
labor, hardship, trouble; **labōriōsus**, harassed
infēlix, ill-starred, unfortunate
perniciōsus, fūnestus, fatal, baleful
male evenīre, turn out badly, go ill
āctum est dē Ab, it is all over with; *dē summā rē āctum est*, all is lost

33 PROPERTY, TRADE

33.1 property

rēs, bona (P), fortūnae (P), pecūnia, property, goods
proprius, own, peculiar, personal, characteristic
rēs familiāris (or prīvāta), private property; *rem familiārem neglegere*, mismanage one's estate; *r. f. dissipāre*, squander
patrimōnium, inherited estate; *p. effundere, dēvorāre, profundere*, squander one's inheritance
vectīgal, income; *v. māgnum (tenue)*, large (slender) i.; **praediōrum frūctus**, income from estates
possidēre, possess, own; **possessiō**, holding, occupation; *in possessiōnem venīre or*

proficīscī, come into possession; *possessiōnem bonōrum Dpn dare or trādere*, give one possession of goods; **possessor**, holder (not necessarily owner)
possidēre, take possession of
dominus, poet. erus, master, owner, proprietor; **dominium**, ownership
potīrī, get possession of
comparāre, procure; *noun comparatiō*
praedia obligāta, mortgaged; *opposite solūta*
ūsūcapere, acquire possession by long use; *noun ūsūcapīō*

33.2 money

pecūnia, money; *māgnae pecūniae*, large sums of money; *pecūniās erogāre*, spend m.; *pecūniam dēvorāre, effundere, lacerāre*, squander m.; *noun effūsiō*; *pecūniās exigere*, exact payment; *pecūnia vī expressa*, extorted m.; *pecūniam expedire*, gain m.; *Dpn pecūniam numerāre or repraesentāre*, pay down; *pecūnia numerāta*, cash; *numerātō solvere*, pay in cash; **repraesentatiō**, payment in cash; **(rem) solvere, pecūniam pendere or solvere or dissolvere, pēnsitāre**, pay; **persolvere**, pay completely, in full
pēnsiō, instalment
nummus, coin, money; *in suis nummis multis esse or versārī*, have plenty of (ready) money; *in nummis habēre*, have in ready money
aes, money
talentum = 60 minae; **mina** = 100 dēnārii; **dēnārius**, silver coin (about 8d.)
sēstertius, nummus, sesterce (about 2d.); **sēstertia** = 1000 sesterces; **sēstertium** = 100,000 sesterces
ās, penny; **sextāns**, farthing, mite
monēta, mint
loculī, casket (with compartments), purse
fiscus, money-bag
sacculus, marsuppiūm, pouch, purse
crumēna, purse (hung round neck)
zōna, money-belt
arca, money-chest, safe
thēca nummāria, money-box
ad nummum convenit, it is correct to a penny
cōdex acceptī et expēnsī, account-book of income and expenditure

33.3 rich/poor

rich

dīves, rich; **dīvitiae**, riches; **dīvitiis** *Acpn* augēre, enrich

opēs (*P*), wealth, resources; **opibus** (*or* **bonīs** *or* **dīvitiis** *or* **pecūniā**) abundāre *or* flōrēre *or* valēre, be very well off, be very wealthy

rēs flōrentēs, affluent circumstances

facultātēs (*P*), riches

opulentus, wealthy; *noun* **opulentia**

locuplēs, **pecūniōsus**, **bene nummātus**, wealthy; **locuplētāre**, enrich

abundāns, wealthy; *noun* **abundantia**

thēsaurus, treasure

gaza, treasure, riches

pecūniae cupidus, greedy for money; *see also* 38.9

frūgālis, thrifty

poor

tenuis, poor; t. **fortūna**, humble means; **tenuitās**, poverty

pecūniae (*G*) **angustiae** (*P*), straitened means

abiectae rēs, reduced circumstances

difficultās nummāria, lack of ready money

pauper, poor; *noun* **paupertās**

egēns, **egēnus**, destitute; *noun* **egestās**

inopia, need, indigence, privation; **inopiā** labōrāre *or* premi, be crushed by want; *adj.* **inops**

pēnūria, want, scarcity

egēre (*or* **indigēre**) **pecūniae** (*or* **pecūniā**), **carēre pecūniā**, lack money

mendicus, *f* **mulier mendīca**, beggar; **mendīcītās**, indigence; *verb* **mendīcāre**

33.4 give/receive

give, lend; credit

dare, give; *see* 34

mūtuum, loan

dō tibi pecūniām mūtuum, crēdō tibi pecūniām, lend you money

pecūniās apud tē occupō, lend you money on interest

dare ūtendum, lend; **fēnus**, interest on money lent; **fēnerārī**, lend on interest

sors, invested capital

ūsūra, interest

reposcere, demand back

fidēs, credit; *f.* **angusta**, low credit

crēditor, creditor

tocullīō, usurer

receive, borrow, owe

accipere, receive; in **acceptum tibi referō**, place to your credit, am indebted to you for

mūtuarī, pecūniās mūtūās sūmere ab Ab, mūtūō sūmere, rogāre ūtendum, accipere ūtendum, borrow

pecūniās sūmere mūtūās, get a loan

impendium, interest on a loan

dēbere, owe; **dēbitor**, debtor; **dēbitum**, debt

aes aliēnum, debt; a. a. **contrahere** (*or* **facere**), run up a debt; in **aere aliēnō esse**, be in debt; **ex aere aliēnō labōrāre**, be burdened with debt; **aere aliēnō obruī**, be over the ears in debt; in **aere aliēnō vacillāre**, stagger under a load of debt; **aere aliēnō dēmersus**, deep in debt; *Acpn* **aere aliēnō obstringere**, bring into debt; *Dpn* **aes aliēnum dōnāre**, cancel a debt; **sē aere aliēnō exserere** *or* **levāre** *or* **liberāre**, **aere aliēnō exīre**, get out of debt

obaerātus, in debt; *as noun* debtor

bonum nōmen, a good debtor

nōmen (*or* **crēditās pecūniās** *or* **aes aliēnum**) **solvere** *or* **dissolvere** *or* **exsolvere**, **nōmina liberāre**, discharge a debt

versūra, borrowing of money to pay a loan

solvendō nōn esse, be insolvent

bonam cōpiām ēiūrāre, swear that one is insolvent

dēcoquere, run through one's fortune

conturbāre (*also with* **ratiōnem** *or* **ratiōnēs**), become bankrupt

homō dīrutus, dēcoctor, bankrupt

ergastulum, workhouse for debtors

nectī ob aes aliēnum, be imprisoned or enslaved for debt; **nexum inīre**, become enslaved through debt

33.5 trade

mercātus, trade; *verb* **mercārī**

mercātūra, trade; m. **māgna et cōpiōsa**, wholesale t.; **mercātūram facere**, trade

quaestus, trade, calling

negōtiātīō, wholesale business, banking business

negōtiātor, merchant, banker; *verb* **negōtiārī**;

argentārius, banker; **mercātor**, merchant, (wholesale) dealer; **caupō**, retailer, shopkeeper; **innkeeper**; **īnstitor**, **tabernārius**, small dealer

merx, vēnālia (*P*), goods, wares, merchandise
forum, mercātus, macellum (for provisions),
emporium, market, market-place
nūndinae, market day, weekly market
nūndinātiō, trafficking, business
taberna, shop
argentāria, bank; *argentāriam facere*, be a
money-changer
mēnsārius, public banker
societās, joint-stock company
socius, partner

selling

vēndere, sell; *rēctē v.*, s. dear; *male or parvō pretiō v.*, s. at a sacrifice;
vēnditāre, try to sell; **vēnditor**, seller;
vēnditiō, sale, auction
exigere, demand
partem octāvam pretiū concēdere, allow a
discount of 12 1/2 per cent
vēnīre, be sold
licēre, be on sale
vēnālis, for sale
auctiō, auction; *auctiōnem prōscribere*,
announce sale; **prōscriptiō**, public notice of
sale; **ātria auctiōnāria**, sale-rooms
pecūniam redigere, get money by selling
actum, pactiō, compectum (*also*
compactum), **conventum**, agreement,
contract; **paciscī**, make a bargain; *adv.*
compectō, according to agreement; **pactor**,
negotiator
ratum facere or habēre, ratify, approve
stipulārī, stipulate, bargain; *noun stipulātiō*
opus locāre, give out a contract; *opus*
condūcere, take a contract
manceps, redēptor, contractor
aestimāre, set a price on; *māgnī a.*, value
highly; **aestimātiō**, valuation; **aestimātor**,
appraiser
prō nihilō dūcere Actg, set no value on
pretium, price; *p. cōstituere or*
cōficere, fix p.; *māgnī (parvī) pretiū*
esse, be worth much (little)
impēdium, cost, expense
ratiō, reckoning; *ratiōnem reddere*, render
account; *ratiōnēs putāre cum Abpn*, settle
accounts with; *r. acceptōrum et*
datōrum, credit and debit account
fructus, lucrum, gain, profit; *Actg in lucrīs*
pōnere, count as gain; *verb lucrārī*,
lucrifacere, merēre, earn, gain; **quaestus**,
profit (in trade), gain; *adj. quaestuōsus*,

profitable, eager for gain; **ēmolumentum**,
advantage, gain; **compendium**, saving, gain
(through saving)

pecūniam in Gtg ēmptiōne cōnsūmere, invest
money in the purchase of; **pecūniam in**
praediō pōnere, invest money in an estate

buying

emere, buy; **redimere**, buy back; **ēptor**,
purchaser; **ēmptiō**, purchase; **redēmptiō**,
buying back
nūndinārī, chaffer; buy
solvere, rem or pecūniam solvere, pay
cārus, dear; *noun cāritās*
male emere, buy dear; **impēnsō pretiō emere**,
buy at a high price
pretiōsus, costly
vīlis, cheap; **vīlī**, cheaply; *noun vilitās*
bene emere, buy cheap
grātis, grātuītō, for nothing, gratuitously;
grātis vīvere, live rent-free
cōnstāre, cost; *nimiō cōnstat*, costs too
much
sūmptus, expense, cost; *sūmptum in Actg*
insūmere, spend money on; *adj.*
sūmptuōsus, expensive, costly
impēdium, impēnsa, expense, expenditure;
impēnsam impōnere Dtg, spend money on;
sine impēdiō, nullā impēnsā, without
cost
auctiō, auction; **licērī**, bid (at an auction);
contrā licērī, outbid
damnum, iactūra, loss; *d. or iactūram*
facere, incur loss; *d. ēmptōrī praestāre*,
guarantee purchaser against loss; *nōn māgnā*
iactūrā factā, at no great expense
dētrīmentum, damage, loss; *d. capere*, incur
loss
fructūs industriae perdere, lose the fruits of
industry

33.6 inheritance

testāmentum, will; *t. improbum*, invalid w.;
t. facere, scribere or cōnscribere,
draw up a w.; *t. rumpere or irritum*
facere, revoke a w.; *t. obsignāre*, affix
seal to w.; *testāmenta subicere*, forge w.;
testāmenta falsa suppōnere, substitute a
forged w.

tabulae testatae, will

ēlogium, codicil

lēgāre, bequeathe

lēgātum (*usu. P*), legacy

intestātus, intestate

hērēs, heir, heiress; h. esse *Gpn or Dpn*, be heir to; h. ex asse, sole h.; Mārcum hērēdem facere, instituere, scribere, make M. one's heir

hērēditās, inheritance; hērēditātem adire, capere, cōsequī, relinquere; *adj.* hērēditārius

herctum ciere, divide an inheritance

patrimōnium, estate inherited from father; see 33.1

exhērēdāre, disinherit; **exhērēs**, disinherited

33.7 slavery/freedom

slavery

servitium, **servitūs**, slavery; esse in servitūte, be a slave; servitūtem perferre, endure s.; **servīre**, be a slave, in service

servus, **serva**, slave; *diminutive* **servulus**, **servula**; *adj.* **servīlis**

mancipium, ownership; slave

verna, home-born slave

ancilla, female slave

vēnālis, slave exposed for sale

Acpn **in servitūtem asserere**, claim as one's slave

sub corōnā (or hastā) vēndere (venīre), sell (be sold) into slavery

in servitium dūcere, **in servitūtem redigere**, **abdūcere**, **abstrahere**, **trādere**, enslave, reduce to slavery

fugitīvus, deserter, fugitive slave

ergastulum, workhouse for slaves

pecūlium, private property of a slave

diārium, daily ration of slaves

freedom

liber, free; **homō liber**, free-man; *noun*

libertās; **liberālis**, befitting a freeborn man

ingenuus, **ingenua**, freeborn man, woman

(servitūte) liberāre, **in libertātem vindicāre**, set free; **vindicta**, liberation, setting free (of a slave)

mittere (servum), **manūmittere**, set free, enfranchise; *noun* **manūmissiō**

Acpn **in libertātem asserere**, declare to be free **libertus**, freedman (in relation to previous master)

libertūnus, freedman (social status)

q.v. household, 25.1

33.8 bribery

mercēs, bribe

largīrī, bribe; *noun* **largitiō**

corrumpere, bribe; *noun* **corruptiō**, **corruptēla**, bribery; **corruptor**, one who bribes

oppūgnāre *Acpn* **pecūniā**, try to bribe

redēptiō, bribery

vēnālis, open to bribery

ambitus, illegal canvassing; *Acpn* **ambitūs** or **dē ambitū accūsāre**, charge with bribery

34 OFFER, REQUEST, ORDER, GIVE, ALLOW

34.1

offerre, offer

porrigere, offer, hold out

accipere, **recipere**, accept

grātus, **acceptus**, agreeable, acceptable

recūsāre, refuse (an offer); *noun* **recūsatiō**

34.2

rogāre, **poscere**, **postulāre**, ask, request, beg, solicit; **frātre** **librum** **rogō** or **poscō**, **librum ā frātre** **postulō**, ask my brother for a book; **vehementer** **rogāre**, demand urgently; *nouns* **rogātiō**, **postulātiō**, **postulātum**

Actg **ex**, **ab** or **dē** *Abpn* **quaerere**, ask

petere, **ōrāre**, beg, request, entreat; *quae* **petō**, my request; **ōrātū tuō**, at your request

dēposcere, **exigere**, demand, require

implōrāre, **obsecrāre**, **exposcere**, **obtestārī**, beseech; *nouns* **obsecrātiō**, **obtestātiō**

exōrāre, move by entreaty

supplicāre, pray, supplicate; *submit* s., beg humbly; *noun* **supplicātiō**, public prayer

ad pedēs *Gpn or Dpn* **accidere** or **sē abicere** or **prōicere** or **prōsternere**, cast oneself before the feet of (as a suppliant); **tendere ad** *Acpn* **manūs supplicēs**, stretch out hands in supplication

precēs *P*, request; **precārī**, entreat, invoke

īnstāre, demand earnestly, press for

rogitāre, demand eagerly

flāgitāre, **afflāgitāre**, demand violently, solicit, clamour for; *nouns* **flāgitātiō**, **flāgitātor**

impetrāre, obtinēre, obtain; **impetrābilis**, easily obtainable
adnuere, nod assent to, grant
negāre, dēnegāre, recūsāre, abnuere, renuere, refuse (a request); *noun* **recūsātiō**
inexōrābilis, inexorable
retinēre, hold back
gravārī, refuse, raise objection

q.v. persuade, urge, 41.61

34.3 order/forbid/obey

order

iubēre, imperāre, command, order, tell (to do)
iūssum, imperium, command, order; **iūssū**, by order; **iniūssū meō**, without my orders; **imperia administrāre**, issue orders
ēdicere, order, ordain, give orders
Dpn praecipere ut subj., enjoin, bid;
praeceptum, order, instruction; **praecepta dare dē Abtg**, give orders about; **praecepta accipere**, receive o.; p. **observāre**, follow o.
mandāre, enjoin, commission, order; *noun* **mandātum**; **mandāta persecūi or exhaurīre**, carry out orders
praescribere, order, prescribe; **praescriptum, praescriptiō**, rule, ordinance
cōgere, compellere, compel
continēre, restrain

forbid

vetāre, forbid
interdicere, forbid (formally)
imperāre or mandāre nē ..., forbid
prohibēre with inf. or Actg and inf., forbid

obey

pārere, oboedire, obsequi, obtemperāre, comply with, obey, submit to; *nouns* **obsequium, obtemperātiō**, compliance, obedience
oboediēns, obedient, compliant
dictō audiēns esse D, obey the orders of
praecepta observāre, comply with precepts

34.4 give/thanks

give

dare, dōnāre, give, present, bestow, confer;
suppeditāre, give, furnish, supply in abundance
tribuere, allot, give; **tribūtum**, contribution
dōnum, mūnus, gift; **mūnuscum**, little present
praemium, reward; p. **expōnere or prōpōnere**, promise r.; **praemiis afficere**, reward; p. **cōsequi or merēre**, obtain r.
mactāre (e.g. **honōribus**), reward
trādere, hand over, deliver
committēre, entrust
condōnāre, surrender, deliver up
reddere, restituere, give back, restore

thanks

grātia, gratitude; **grātia**, thanks; **grātiarum actiō**, expression of thanks; **eī grātiā habeo**, am thankful to him; **māximam grātiā habeo**, am most grateful; **parem grātiā referre**, return like for like; **grātiās (also grātēs) agere**, thank, express thanks; **grātiā referre**, returns thanks, repay, requite, return kindness
grātus, thankful, grateful; g. **ergā or in mē fuit**, **grātum sē mihi praebuit**, he was grateful to me; **grātō animō**, gratefully
ingrātus, ungrateful
sē memorem probāre, show gratitude

34.5 please/thank you

please

sī vīs, or sīs, sōdēs, sī libet, (if you) please
amābō tē or amābō, I shall be much obliged, I beg you

thank you

benīgnē dīcis or facis, thank you
benīgnē ac liberāliter, you are very kind, thank you very much

34.6 allow

concēdere, permittere, sinere, patī, allow, grant, suffer; *noun* **concessiō, concessus, permissiō**
venia, permission, leave; **veniam petere** (dare), ask (give) permission
licentia, leave to do as one pleases, licence

facile (or **aequō animō**) **patī**, acquiesce in
cōnfitērī, grant, concede
licet, it is allowed

35 AMUSEMENT, SPORT

35.1

iocus, **iocātiō**, jest, sport; *adjs.* **iocōsus**,
ioculāris; *verb* **iocārī**
nūgae, **ineptiae**, trifles, nonsense; *verb* **nūgārī**
dēsipere, indulge in trifling
scurra, **sanniō**, buffoon, jester; *adj.* **scurrīlis**

q.v. wit, humour, 41.23

35.2

lūdus, game, sport; *verb* **lūdere**; *adj.* **lūdicer**,
connected with sport, done in sport
collūdere, play with; **collūsor**, playmate
lūdī, **lūdicrum**, public games, shows; **lūdōs**
celebrāre, hold games; **lūdōs**
frequentāre, often attend g.
fēriae, festivals, holidays
mūnus, spectacle; *m. dare or ēdere*, provide
a show
māgnificus, sumptuous, splendid; *noun*
māgnificentia

35.3

circus, ring, racecourse; (**lūdī**) **circēnsēs**, races
spatium, racecourse
carcerēs, barrier, starting-point; **calx**, **mēta**,
turning-point, goal
cursus, race
palma, wreath, prize; **palmāris**, worthy of a
prize
aurīga, charioteer
factiō, party of charioteers; *there were four*,
with distinctive colours (**f. albāta**, **prasina**,
russāta, **veneta**)
curriculum, race-ground, sports ground
stadium, **spatium**, racecourse, track (for foot-
racing); **stadium currere**, run a race
cursor, runner (in a race)

35.4

gladiātor, gladiator; *adj.* **gladiātōrius**, e.g.
lūdus; **familia gladiātōria**, band of
gladiators

murmillō, gladiator (with sword, shield and
helmet)

bēstiārius, beast-fighter

certāre, contend; **pūgnis c.**, box

certāmen, contest, match

harēna, arena (in amphitheatre)

pugil, boxer; **pugilātus**, boxing contest

caestus, boxing-glove

luctārī, wrestle; *nouns* **luctātiō**, **luctātor**

palaestra, wrestling school or place; wrestling

alīptēs, master of wrestling school

āthlēta, athlete

gymnasium, gymnasium

35.5 theatre

lūdicra ars, drama

theātrum, theatre; *adj.* **theātrālis**

spectāculum, seats of spectators, amphitheatre

pulpitum, **scaena**, stage; *adj.* **scaenicus**; **lūdī**

scaenicī, theatrical performances; *in*

scaenam prōdīre, appear on the stage

aulaeum, stage curtain

sīparium, smaller curtain, drop-scene

cavea, spectator's seats; theatre

lūdicrum, **spectāculum**, stage-play

fābula, play; **fābula palliāta**, drama of
Greek life; **fābula togāta**, drama of
Roman life; **fābulam dare or docēre**,
produce a play; **fābulam peragere**, act a
play

cōmoedia, comedy; *adjs.* **cōmoedus**, **cōmicus**;

tragoedia, tragedy; *adj.* **tragicus**, e.g.

āctor, **poēta**

cothurnus, buskin (of tragedian); **soccus**, low
shoe (of comedian)

mīmus, mime

plaudere, applaud; *noun* **plausus**; **plausibilis**,
meriting applause

explōdere, **exsibilāre**, hoot or hiss of the stage

fābula stat, is a success; *f. cadit*, falls flat,
is a failure

histriō, actor, cantor, **artifex scaenicus**,
scaenicus, actor

in scaenā esse, be an actor

grex, **caterva**, company, troop

persōna, mask; character; **persōnam in**
scaenā tractāre, represent a character in a
play, play a part

partēs, character; **primae p.**, *or* **primae**,
principal characters; **primās agere**, play the
chief part; **secundae**, **tertia p.**

cōmoedus, comedian; **tragoedus**, tragedian

mīmus, **mīma**, mime (mute actor, actress)

lūdiō, **lūdius**, pantomimist

saltāre, dance, act in dumb show; *nouns*
saltātiō, **saltātor**, **saltātrix**
tripudium, dance (originally religious); *verb*
tripudiāre
chorēa, **chorus**, (round) dance
canticum, song with dance

35.6

lūdere pilā, play ball
lūdere trochō, trundle a hoop
turbinem versāre, spin a top

36 TOOLS, MATERIALS, etc.

officīna, **fabrica**, workshop, factory
artifex, artisan; **artificium**, trade, handicraft
opifex, workman, mechanic
operārius *or* **homō o.**, workman
faber, smith, carpenter; *f.* **ferrārius**,
blacksmith; *f.* **tignārius**, carpenter; *verb*
fabricārī
vāsculārius, worker in metals
māchinātor, engineer, architect

īnstrūmentum, *usu. collective*, instruments
ferrāmenta, iron tools
māchina, machine
malleus, hammer, mallet
incūs, anvil
follis, pair of bellows
excūdere, forge, hammer into shape
līma, file; *verb* **līmāre**
serra, saw
terebra, gimlet
forceps, pair of pincers, tongs
scālae, ladder; **gradus**, rung

fodere, dig, excavate
īnfodere, dig in, bury
pāla, spade; **ligō**, hoe; **dolābra**, pickaxe
fossor, digger, ditcher

māteria, **tignum**, building materials; timber
trabs, beam; *adj.* **trabālis**
ascia, **secūris**, axe, hatchet
bipennis, double-edged axe

dolāre, hew
clāvus, nail; **trānstra** **clāvīs** **ferreīs**
cōnfigere, nail beams
cuneus, wedge
scalprum, chisel; **scalpere**, carve

q.v. metals, 23

cōs, whetstone

suere, sew, stitch
īnsuere, sew in
acus, needle; **acū** **pingere** *or* **pingere**,
embroider
filum, **stāmen**, thread
colus, distaff
fūsus, spindle
texere, weave; **textum**, web, texture
tēla, web; warp (threads running lengthwise in
loom); **trāma**, woof (crosswise)

37 ARMY

37.1

exercitus, army; **exercitum** **īnstruere**, draw
up a.
agmen, army (marching); *a.* **prīmum**,
vanguard; *a.* **extrēmum** *or* **novissimum** (*or*
novissimī), rearguard; *a.* **claudere**, bring
up the rear; **novissimōs** **carpere**, harass
the rear; **cōnfertō** *or* **quadrātō** **agmine**, in
close order, with closed ranks
aciēs, army (in battle array)
cōpiāe, forces; **māgnae c.**, a large force;
cōpiās **īnstruere**, draw up *f.*
armātūrae, armed troops
rōbur mīlitum, flower of the army, choice
troops
auxilia, auxiliary troops, i.e. allies and light-
armed troops as opposed to legion; *adj.*
auxiliāris, **-ārius**
ālārēs, **ālārīi**, auxiliary troops
accēnsī, reserve troops
legiōnārīi, heavy-armed troops
mīles statārius, soldier fighting in the ranks
ferentārīi, **vēlitēs**, **rōrārīi**, light-armed troops
funditor, slinger, light-armed soldier
peditātus, **pedestrēs cōpiāe**, infantry; **pedes**,
foot-soldier; *P* **peditēs**, infantry; **pedester**,

on foot, infantry (*adj.*); **pedibus merere**, serve with the infantry
equitatus, equestrēs cōpiae, cavalry; **eques**, horseman; *collectively*, cavalry; **equester**, cavalry (*adj.*); **equō merere**, serve with the cavalry; **ex equīs pūgnare**, fight on horseback
beneficiarius, privileged soldier
calō, soldier's servant
ordinēs, ranks; *ordinēs servāre*, stay in the ranks; *cōfertis (solūtis) ordinibus*, with closed (open) ranks
in orbem cōsistere, orbem facere, to form a circle
cuneum facere, form a wedge
caterva, troop (of barbarians)

37.2

legiō, legion (10 cohorts and 300 cavalry); *adj.*
legiōnarius; **legiōnes complere** or **supplere**, bring legions up to full strength
Hastātī, in front; **Prīncipēs**, next, **Triārīi**, behind
prīncipia P, van of army, first line of soldiers
antesignānī, chosen soldiers who fought in front and in defence of the standards
cornū, āla, wing of army (*usu.* cavalry); *adjs.*
ālāris, ālārius
cohors, cohort (3 maniples), battalion; *cohortēs facere*, levy c.; *dispōnere cohortēs*, arrange c.; *cohortēs explere*, bring c. up to full strength
manipulus, maniple (2 centuries or companies); *adj.* **manipulāris**
centuria, century, company (of 100, later 60, men); *verb* **centuriare**, divide into c.; *adv.*
centuriātīm, by c.'s
turma, troop or squadron of cavalry;
turmālēs, horsemen in a t.; *adv.* **turmātīm**

imperium, command; *summa imperiī*, chief or supreme command; *s.i. Dpn dēferre*, appoint to chief comand; *imperium Dpn prōrogāre*, extend period of command;
noun **prōrogātiō**
exercitum dūcere, command army
praesse D, be in command of
praeficere D, put in command of
recensere, recōgnoscere, review (an army or navy); *noun* **recōgnitiō**
imperātor, commander-in-chief; *adj.*
imperātōrius

dux, general
lēgātī (P), general's staff, officers
comitātus, retinue, suite
lēgātus (or later, praefectus) legiōnis, colonel, general of division
praefectus equitum, commander or colonel of cavalry
tribūnus militāris or militum, military tribune (six to each legion, each in command for two months)
centuriō, captain
prīmīpīlus, senior captain (of Triārīi); *primum pīlum dūcere*, be s. c.

37.3

mīles, soldier; *m. gregārius, manipulāris, private s.; m. legiōnārius*, soldier of the line; *adj.* **militāris**; *verb* **militare**, serve as a soldier
vetus mīles, veterānus (mīles), tried soldier, veteran
seniōrēs, Roman citizens between forty-five and sixty, summoned to military service only in an extreme emergency
stipendium, pay; *s. merere or mereri*, go on a campaign; *quīna stipendia merere*, serve five years; *stipendia emerere*, complete term of service; *adj.*
stipendiarius, serving for pay
mercennāriū militēs, mercenaries
voluntariū (militēs), volunteers
ēvocātī, volunteers (who have completed military service)
militiae (adv.), in military service, on a campaign, in the field; *domī militiaeque*, at home and abroad
commeātus, vacātiō, furlough; *dare commeātum Dpn; esse in commeātū; vacātiōnēs omnēs tollere*, stop all leave
exercitum comparare, scribere, cōscribere, raise an army
ad arma conclāmāre, call to arms
dēlectus, levy; *dēlectum habere*, hold a levy, recruit
conquisitor, recruiting officer
tīrō, recruit; **cōscriptī**, recruits
sacrāmentum, oath of allegiance, taken on enlisting
arma ferre posse, be fit for military service
militiam perennem facere, serve for a year
immūnis militiā, exempt from military service; **militiae vacātiō**, exemption from m. s.; **militiam dērectare**, avoid m. s.

sēditō, mutiny; *sēditōnem concitāre, movēre, facere, cōnflāre, stir up m.; sēdāre*, bring to an end (by gentle means); **comprimere**, suppress; *adj. sēditōsus*
mittere, dīmittere (e.g. *legiōnēs*), disband;
ēmeritus, (honourably) discharged
novae cōpiae, supplēmentum, reinforcements
subsidiū or -ia (P), reserves; *s. submittere*, send up r.

37.4

tēlum, weapon (missile); *vīs tēlōrum, crēbra tēla*, shower of missiles; *intrā (extrā) iactum or coniectum tēli*, within (out of) range; *tēla iacere, conicere, adigere, immittere, mittere*, hurl, discharge; *tēla rēicere*, return

missile, missile

arma, arms; *a. tractāre*, wield a.; in *armīs*, under a.; *vī et armīs*, by force of a.; *a. expedire*, hold a. in readiness; *a. sūmere or capere*, take up a.; *a. inferre*, invade; *ab armīs discēdere*, *arma pōnere*, lay down a.; *a. abicere*, throw away a.; *verb armāre*

armātus, armed; **armātūra**, equipment;
inermis, unarmed; **expeditus**, lightly armed (soldier), ready for battle; **impeditus**, in heavy marching order

sarcina, bundle; (*P*), baggage; *sarcinās colligere or cōnferre*, collect b.;
impedimenta (P), baggage of an army, baggage train

vāsa, military equipment, baggage

commeātus (S or P), provisions, supplies;
māgna vīs commeātūs, abundant supplies;
hostēs commeātū interclūdere or prohibēre, cut off the enemy's supplies

cibāria (P), rations, fodder

frūmentum, grain; **frūmentārī**, get food (for soldiers); **rem frūmentāriam expedire or comparāre or prōvidere or dē rē frūmentāriā prōvidere**, provision

suppetere, be available, in abundance, hold out (of supplies)

iūmentum, pack animal

pābulum, fodder; *verb pābulārī*, forage;
nouns pābulātiō, pābulātor

cassis, helmet (*usu. metal*)

galea, helmet (*usu. leather*)

lōrica, (leather) cuirass

clipeus, (round) shield

parma, (small round) shield

scūtum, (oblong) shield

caetra, small leather shield; *adj. caetrātus*

pelta, (light) shield; **peltastae**, troops armed with pelta

umbō, boss of shield; shield

palūdātus, dressed in **palūdāmentum**, military cloak

sagum, military cloak; *saga sūmere or ad saga ire*, take up arms; in *sagīs esse*, be under arms; **sagulum**, small military cloak

balteus, girdle, belt

ēnsis, gladius, sword; *gladium stringere, dīstringere, ēdūcere*, draw s.; in *gladium incumbere*, fall on s.

vāgīna, sheath, scabbard; *gladium in vāgīnam recondere*, sheathe one's sword

mūcrō, aciēs, point, edge

pugiō, sīca, dagger

hasta, spear; **hastile**, shaft of spear

lancea, lance, spear

pīlum, verūtum, javelin

iaculum, dart, javelin

gaesum, heavy javelin of Gauls

iaculātor, dart-thrower

contorquēre, hurl

spīculum, iron tip (of spear or arrow)

arcus, bow; *arcum intendere*, draw b.;

sagitta, arrow

sagittārius, archer

pharetra, poet., quiver

funda, sling; **glāns**, sling-stone

funditor, slinger

signum, vexillum, standard; **aquila**, standard (of legion)

signifer, vexillārius, aquilifer, standard-bearer

q.v. trumpet, 13.2

37.5 on the march

q.v. agmen, 37.1

signa ferre or movēre or vellere or convellere, break up camp, begin a march;
signa sequī, march in military order

iter facere, march; *iter* intermittere, stop marching; *extentis itineribus*, by forced marches; *magnis itineribus contendere*, hasten with forced marches; **ex (or in) itinere**, on the march; **itinere continuatō**, marching continuously
prōgredi, **signa movēre or ferre or prōferre**, advance; **contendere**, **festināre**, **mātūrāre**, push on, hurry, hasten
signa convertere, face about, march in another direction, change one's route
cōsistere, **signa cōstituere**, halt
insidiae, ambush; *locus ad insidiās aptus*, a suitable ambush; **insidiārī D**, lie in ambush for; *militēs in insidiīs collocāre*, station soldiers in ambush
opprimere, surprise, catch
intercludere, cut off

explōrātor, spy, scout
speculātor, scout, reconnoiterer
ēmissārius, emissary, scout, spy
explōrāre, reconnoitre

37.61 war/peace

war

bellum, war
expeditiō, campaign; **stipendia merēre or merērī**, go on a campaign
bellicōsus, **pūgnāx**, **ferōx**, warlike; **imbellis**, unwarlike
rebelliō, revolt, rebellion; *adj. plp rebellis*; *verb rebellāre*, renew war
dēfectiō, revolt; *verb dēficere*
hostis, enemy; (*P*), enemy (collectively)
hostilis, **īnfēstus**, **inimicus**, hostile
hosticus, belonging to enemy

peace

pāx, peace
pācāre, make peaceful; **pācātus**, in a state of peace
indūtiāe, truce, armistice; *indūtiās facere*, arrange t.; *i. pepigisse*, have arranged t.; *i. tollere*, terminate t.; *i. violāre*, break t.
condiciōnēs, terms; *c. ferre*, offer terms of surrender; *c. aequae*, fair, favourable t.; *c. iniquae*, harsh t.
obses, hostage; *obsidēs dare*, give h.; *o. inter sē dare*, exchange h.; *o. accipere*, accept h.; *o. hostibus impōnere*, exact h.

socius, ally; **societās**, league, alliance; *societātem cum Abpn coīre*, cōflāre, *inīre or statuere*
foedus, treaty; *ex foedere*, according to a t.; *f. facere*, *ferīre*, *icere*, *pangere*, ratify a treaty; *f. frangere*, *rumpere*, *violāre*, break a t.

37.62 raid

militēs (legiōnēs, cohortēs, exercitum) ēdūcere, lead forth, march out, take the field
signa prōferre, **signa īnferre (in Ac)**, march to the attack; **aggredi**, **adorīrī**, **invādere**, attack
arma ultrō īnferre, be the aggressor
incurrere, **incursiōnem**, **incursum**, **excursiōnem facere**, make a raid (on); *via excursiōnibus īnfēsta*, road unsafe owing to raids
hostēs dēprehendere, fall upon, surprise enemy
dēfendere, defend; *ab hostibus mē d.*
repūgnāre, **resistere D**, resist
sustinēre, check
repellere, **prōpulsāre**, drive back

vāstāre, lay waste; *agrōs v.*, lay waste the country; **vāstitās**, devastation; **vāstatiō**, laying waste
populāre or -ārī, lay waste, plunder; *nouns populātiō, populātor*
ferrō īgnīque, with fire and sword
ferre atque agere praedam, plunder (*agere of cattle*)

37.63 battle

proelium, battle; **proeliārī**, join battle
pūgna, fight, battle; *verb pūgnāre*
manum (or manūs) cōserere, **manūs or arma cōferre**, *or pedem cōferre*, engage in close combat, join battle
cōnfligere armīs, **armīs congregedi**, fight; *noun congressus*
proelium or bellō or ferrō or armīs dēcernere, fight a battle
certāre, **dīmicāre**, struggle; *nouns certāmen, dīmicātiō*
comminus, in close (single) combat, hand to hand
ēminus, at distance suitable for missiles

ad hostem ire, signa ferre in hostem, prōpūgnāre, advance to attack
impetus, onset, attack; *impetum facere*, charge
imprōvisus, unexpected; *adv. imprōvisō, dē or ex imprōvisō*
impūgnāre, attack, e.g. Galliam; *noun impūgnātiō*
oppūgnāre, assault
rēicere, force back, repulse
locus, position; *locum capere*, seize p.; in *locō perstāre*, hold one's ground; *locō cēdere or excēdere*, give g.
hostēs gradū dēmōvēre, make enemy yield ground
praeoccupāre (e.g. *collēs*), occupy first

37.64 confusion and retreat

tumultus, confusion, disturbance;
tumultuōsus, tumultuārius, disorderly
perturbāre, throw into confusion; **perturbārī**, fall into c.; *noun perturbātiō*
trepidāre, get confused
cūctārī, hesitate
labōrāre, be hard pressed
receptus, retreat; *signum receptuī*, signal for retreat; *receptuī canere*, sound a retreat
sē recipere, sē or pedem or gradum referre, or referrī, retreat, retire
dēcērtāre, dēpūgnāre, fight to a finish
anceps, uncertain, indecisive; a. *stetit pūgna*, the issue was uncertain
aequō Mārte or aequīs condiōnibus pūgnāre, or aequō proeliō discēdere, fight indecisively, a drawn battle

37.65 pursuit, flight, desertion

īnsistere, sequī, īnsequī, cōnsectārī, persequī, prōsequī, īnstāre *Dpn*, press upon, pursue
fugāre, pellere, in fugam dare or conicere or impellere or vertere or convertere, put to flight, rout
fuga, flight; *sē fugae dare or mandāre, sē in fugam dare or cōnferre, fugam capere or petere, terga vertere or convertere or dare, sē in fugam concitāre*, take to flight; *fugam sistere*, stay, arrest flight
fugere, effugere, prōfugere, flee
refugere, flee back, escape
ēvādere, escape

trānsire, dēsciscere ab Abpn ad Acpn, perfugere, rarely trānsfugere, ab signīs discēdere, signa relinquare or dēserere, desert
perfuga, trānsfuga, dēsertor, deserter

37.66 disaster, slaughter

clādēs, defeat, disaster
caedēs, strāgēs, carnage, slaughter
interneciō, massacre, carnage
concīdere, cut to pieces
trucidāre, contrucidāre, butcher; *noun trucidātiō*
dēlēre, wipe out
salvus, incolumis, intāctus, safe, unharmed, uninjured
exsanguis, exhausted, worn out
vulnerāre, wound; **vulnera excipere**, get wounded
saucius, wounded; *verb sauciāre*, wound, disable
vulneribus cōfectus, exhausted by wounds
iacent militum animī, the soldiers' spirits are broken
(exercitus) attrītus, exhausted

37.67 victory/surrender

victory
victōria, victory; v. *certa or haud dubia*, complete v.; **vincere, victōriam adipīscī, expēdire, parere, reportāre, victōriā potīrī, rem obtinēre**, gain a victory; *victōriam temperāre*, use v. with moderation
dēvincere, conquer completely
victor, victrix, conqueror; *victor (oftener superior) discēdere*, come off victorious
vincere, domāre, subdue, conquer; **domitor**, conqueror
indomītus, inexpūgnābilis, invictus, unconquerable
proeliō superior esse, be victorious (in battle)
dētrīmentum afferre or īnferre, inflict defeat; d. *accipere or capere*, be defeated
superāre, overcome
prōflīgāre, overwhelm, crush
subigere, in potestātem redigere, subdue
hostem armīs exuere, disarm enemy

surrender

dēditiō, trāditiō, surrender, capitulation; in *dēditiōnem accipere*, receive the surrender of

trādere (e.g. urbem), surrender; **manūs dare** or **dēdere**, **sē dēdere**, **arma trādere**, in **dēditionem venire**, in **fidem atque potestātem sē permittere**, surrender (*intrans.*)

victōrīs iram dēprecārī, ask for quarter; **salūtem petere**, beg for mercy

mortem dēprecārī, beg for life; *Acpn* (**incolumem**) **cōservāre**, grant a man his life

captus, captive, prisoner

potestātī alterius sē submittere, become subject to; **subiectus**, subject

in officiō continēre *Ac*, keep in submission; **in officiō permanēre**, remain in submission

capere, **captivum facere**, take prisoner

sub iugum mittere, send under the yoke

sub corōnā (or **hastā**) **vēndere**, sell into slavery

37.7 camp

oppidum, **arx**, **castellum**, **castrum**, fort, stronghold; **castrum nātūrā locī mūnitum**, fort with strong natural position; *adjs.* **castrēnsis**, **castellānus**

castra (*P*), camp; *c.* **capere**, **locum ad c.** (or **castrīs**) **idōneum dēligere**, choose a site for a camp; *c.* **facere**, **pōnere** or **mūnīre**, pitch c., encamp; *c.* **movēre**, break up or shift c.; **militēs castrīs tenēre**, keep the soldiers in camp

statīva or **castra statīva**, stationary camp

cōnsidere, encamp, take up a position

signa convellere, strike camp

hiberna or **castra hiberna**, winter quarters;

hibernācula, winter tents

aestīva, summer camp

praesidium, garrison

tabernāculum, tent

sub pellibus, under tents, in camp

praetōrium, general's tent

prīncipia *P*, open space in camp, general's quarters

praefectus castrōrum (or **castrīs**), quartermaster

vigilia, watch, guard, sentinel; **vigiliās dispōnere**, post sentinels; *verb* **vigilāre**;

vigilantia, watchfulness

esse in speculis, be on the look-out

cūstōdia (*usu. in P*), **excubiae**, guard, sentry;

excubāre, keep watch

mūnitio, fortification; **mūnitioēs facere**, erect; **locum mūnitioēbus fīrmāre**, fortify; *m.* **prōruere**, demolish

mūnimentum (*usu. P*), fortifications, entrenchments, (fortified) lines

opera facere, raise siegeworks

mūnīre, **commūnīre**, **ēmūnīre**, fortify, entrench; **permūnīre**, fortify completely

exstruere, heap up, construct; *noun* **extrūctiō**

moenia (*P*), ramparts; **moenia** or **mūrum complēre**, man the walls; **cūstōdiās in mūrō dispōnere**, station sentinels on the wall

mūrōs (**cunīculō**) **subruere** or **suffodere** or **cunīculum facere**, undermine walls

vāllum, rampart, palisade; **castra vāllō cīncta**, camp surrounded by a rampart; **vāllum dūcere** or **exstruere**, raise a r.; *v.* **scindere**, demolish a r.; **vāllāre**, entrench

vallus, stake; palisade

cippī, palisade

agger, mound, earthwork; **aggerem iacere**, **exstruere**, **īnstruere**

fossa, trench; **fossam dūcere**, make a trench

dispōnere, arrange, station

statiō, outpost, post, picket; in **statiōne**, on guard; **statiōnem agere**, keep guard; **cōpiās in statiōnēs collocāre** or **pōnere**, assign troops to their posts; **statiōnēs pōnere** or **dispōnere**, set pickets; in **statiōnem succēdere**, relieve

incautus, **imprōvidus**, **imprūdēns**, heedless, not foreseeing, off one's guard

37.8 siege

obsidēre, **circumsedēre**, besiege, blockade, invest

obsidiō, **obsessiō**, **circumsessiō**, siege, blockade; **abscēdere** or **absistere**, or **obsidiōnem relinquere**, raise a siege; **obsidiōne liberāre**, raise a siege (of the relieving army); **corōna obsidiālis**, awarded for relieving town from siege

māchina, military engine

turris, tower; **turrem excitāre**, erect t.; **tormentum**, **ballista**, **catapulta**, siege catapult, engine for hurling missiles; **falārica**, missile thrown by catapult; **ariēs**, battering ram

testūdō, roof of shields; **vīnea**, **mūsculus**, mantlet; **vīneās agere**, advance m.; **pluteus**, shed to protect besiegers; **scālās pōnere** or **admovēre**, apply scaling-ladders;

scālīs moenia temptāre, attack walls with scaling-ladders
falcēs mūrālēs, hooks for pulling down walls
famēs, starvation; *famē domāre*, reduce by starvation; *fame cōnsūmī or ēnecārī*, die of starvation
sītis, thirst
pestis, pestilentia, plague
ēruptiō, excursiō, excursus, sally, sortie; *ēruptiōnem facere, excurrere, ē castrīs ērumpere*, sally forth from camp, make a sortie

oppūgnāre, assault; *noun oppūgnātiō; oppūgnātiōnem dimittere*, abandon a.
expūgnāre, vī capere, take by storm; *noun expūgnātiō; adj. expūgnābilis*
oppidum ēvertere, funditus dēlēre, raze a town to the ground; o. *diripere*, sack t.
portās obstruere, refringere, barricade, break open the gates

37.9 spoils, etc.

spoliāre, pillage, sack; **spolia**, spoils; *opīma spolia*, spoils of honour (taken on field of battle by victorious from vanquished general); **spoliātiō**, robbing, plundering
diripere, pillage, sack
compilāre, expilāre, plunder, pillage
praeda, poet. exuviae, spoil, booty; **praedārī**, make booty
praemium, booty, reward
manubiae, money obtained from sale of booty
mercēs, recompense
decus, glory; **decorāre**, honour
triumphus, triumph; *adj. triumphālis; verb triumphāre; triumphum dēportāre; triumphum Trāiānō dēcernere*, decree a t. to T.
ovāre, celebrate an **ovātiō** (lesser triumph)
tropaeum, monument of victory

38 CHARACTER

38.1

nātūra, natural disposition, character; *nātūrae bonitās*, good natural gifts
animus, character

indolēs, disposition, temperament (*usu. moral*); *bonā indole praeditus*, highly gifted
affectiō, disposition
praeditus *Abtg.*, endowed or gifted with, possessed of
ā nātūrā subōrnātus, endowed by nature

mōrēs *P.*, character (mode of life); **homō bene (male) mōrātus**, of good (bad) character; **mōrālis**, moral
ingenium, character (*usu. intellectual*); i. *tortuōsum*, not frank
proprius, personal, characteristic; **proprium, proprietās**, characteristic
singulāria, idiosyncrasies

animī māgnitūdō, greatness of soul
rēctus, honourable, upright; **rēctum**, uprightness, rectitude
vir sānctus, blameless, pious man; **sānctitās**, piety, honour
decet, it is becoming, proper; **decēns**, seemly; *noun decentia*
virtūs, manliness, virtue; *virtūte praeditus, virtuous; virtūtem colere, sequī, practise goodness; vir expertāe virtūtis*, of tried worth
modestus, virtuous, moral

exīstimātiō, good name, reputation, credit
fāma, (good, *rarely* bad) reputation; *adj. fāmōsus*
glōria, fame, renown; *adj. glōriōsus*
splendor, honour, dignity; **splendidus**, noble, illustrious
includus, famous, renowned
bene audīre, be well spoken of

animī prāvītās, depravity, vice
vitium, defect, fault, blemish; *vitia pōnere, give up faults; vitia extirpāre*, root out, eradicate faults
dēdecet, it is not seemly or proper; *dēdecus*, disgrace
prāvus, corruptus, depraved, vicious; *noun corruptiō*

vitiōsus, wicked, vicious

q.v. 47.2

infāmia, ignōminia, opprobrium, disgrace, dishonour; *infāmiā flagrāre*, be sunk in dishonour; **infāmis**, disreputable; **infāmāre**, dishonour

flāgitium, dēdecus, disgrace, dishonour, shame

probrum, disgrace; disgraceful act

foedus, dishonourable; **foedāre**, disgrace, dishonour

male audīre, stand in bad repute

38.2

bonus, good; *comp. melior, superl. optimus*

liberālis, ingenuus, generōsus, honourable, gentlemanly, noble-minded; *nouns liberālītās; ingenuitās*

urbānus, polite, refined; **urbānitās**, courtesy, refinement

ēlegāns, choice, tasteful; **ēlegantia**, good taste, refinement

gravis, venerable, eminent; **gravitās**, dignity, seriousness

māiestās, dignity, grandeur

māgnanimus, high-souled; *nouns māgnanimitās, māgnitūdō animī*

māgnificus, noble, distinguished; *noun māgnificentia*

ēgregius, distinguished, eminent, honourable

eximius, distinguished, exceptional

illūstris, distinguished, brilliant

nōbilis, distinguished, superior; *noun nōbilitās*

celsus, noble

ēminēre, excellere, flōrēre, praecellere, be conspicuous, eminent; *vir animō et virtūte praecellēns*, a man of excellent character

hērōs, illustrious man

probus, honest, upright; *noun probitās*

spectātus, respected, worthy

honestus, honourable, virtuous, respected; *noun honestās*

apertus, simplex, frank, honest; *noun simplicitās*

praestāns, sublīmis, superior, preeminent, distinguished

summī virī, virī praestantissimī or singulārēs, great men

malus, bad; *comp. pēior, superl. pessimus; also dēterior, dēterrīmus*

illiberālis, ignoble, ungenerous, mean; *noun illiberālītās*

humilī abiectōque animō, mean-spirited

sordidus, low-born, mean, vile

dēgener, degenerate, base; *verb dēgenerāre*

animus pusillus or angustus or minūtus, petty spirit

ūnus ē (or dē) multīs, an ordinary man

mediocris, ordinary, undistinguished

ignōbilis, ignoble

improbus, unprincipled

inhonestus, dishonourable

vulgus, the common herd

sordēs, faex, the dregs, rabble

homō nihili, homō luteus, a worthless man

38.3 strong/weak

strong, firm

modestia, (animī) moderātiō, self-control; *adj. modestus*

temperātus, moderate, restrained; **temperantia**, moderation, self-restraint

continentia, moderation

rōbur animī, strength of mind; *adj. rōbustus*, e.g. *animus*; *verb corrōborāre*, strengthen, steel

constāns, stabilis, firmus, firm, steadfast; *nouns cōstantia, stabilitās, firmitās*, resolution, determination, stability, endurance

obstinātus, pervicāx, determined, steadfast (*also* obstinate); *nouns obstinātiō, pervicācia; obstināre*, be firmly resolved; *obstinātō animō*, with mind made up; *obstinātiō sententiae*, adherence to one's principles

affirmātus, obstinate

tenāx, steadfast, persistent

pertināx, firm, unyielding (*also* obstinate); *noun pertinācia*

weak, fickle

impotēns, immoderātus, incontīnēns, intemperāns, unrestrained, having no self-control

intemperantia, intemperīēs, lack of restraint, intemperate conduct

petulāns, capricious; *noun petulantia*

dēbilis, weak (of mind); *noun dēbilitās*

ēnervātus, unnerved, weakly
veternus, sloth, enervation
mōbilis, levis, incōnstāns, subitus, varius,
ventōsus, fickle, inconstant, unreliable;
nouns **mōbilitās, levitās animī,**
incōnstantia, fickleness, want of principle
infīrmus, weak (in character); *infīrmo animō*
esse, be inconstant

q.v. weakness, 38.5

38.4 faithful/faithless

faithful

fidēs, faith, trust, loyalty; *fidem praestāre*,
keep one's word; *fidem fallere*, break
faith; *fidem tibi habeō*, put faith in you,
place reliance on you; *adjs.* **fidēlis, fidus**,
faithful, trustworthy; *noun* **fidēlitās**
fidere *Dpn*, trust
spectāre in *Acpn*, rely on; **spectātus**, tried,
tested
frētus *Ab*, relying on
pius, loyal, devoted, dutiful; *noun* **pietās**

faithless

infidēlis, infidus, perfidus, perfidiōsus,
faithless, treacherous, disloyal; *nouns*
infidēlitās, perfidia
diffidere *Dpn*, distrust; *noun* **diffidentia**
Acpn ā fidē abdūcere, render disloyal

38.5 strength/weakness

strength, courage

ferōx, bold, martial, high-spirited; **ferōciter**,
with spirit; **ferōcia, ferōcītās**, spirit, vigour,
bravery
audēre, dare; **audāx**, bold, resolute; *also* rash;
noun **audācia**
animus, high courage, spirit; *animōs tollere*
Dpn, raise the spirits of; **animōsus**, spirited
spīritus, courage; *spīritūs remittere*, lose
c.
animus praesēns, resolute spirit
fidūciae plēnus, courageous
virtūtem praestāre, show courage
sē cōfirmāre, take courage
fidēs, confident, bold
fortis, strong, brave, sturdy; **fortitūdō**,
courage, bravery
virtūs, courage (*also* virtue); *virtūtem*
praestāre, show c.
intrepidus, *plp*, undaunted

weakness, cowardice

timidus, timid, cowardly; *noun* **timiditās**
ignāvus, cowardly; **ignāvia**, cowardice
imbēcillus, weak, feeble, *noun* **imbēcillitās**
fragilis, frail; *noun* **fragilitās**
mollis, unmanly, weak; **mollitia, mollitiēs**,
weakness, irresolution; *mollitiā fluere*,
be relaxed, slack
effeminātus, womanish, effeminate
animō dēficere or succumbere, be
disheartened, lose heart

38.6 modesty/pride

modesty

pudor, modesty
pudīcus, modest, chaste; *noun* **pudīcītia**
modestus, submissus, modest, unassuming;
noun **modestia**
verēcundus, modest, bashful; **verēcundia**,
shyness, reverence

pride, insolence, boastfulness

suī fidūcia, self-confidence
superbus, arrogāns, insolēns, fastidiōsus,
celsus, proud, haughty, disdainful; *nouns*
superbia, arrogāntia, insolentia,
fastidium, fastus
supercilium, arrogance
audācia, impudence, insolence, audacity
petulāns, impudent; *noun* **petulantia**
insolenter sē efferre, swell with insolence
procāx, insolent, impertinent; *noun* **procācītās**
protervus, impudent, impertinent; *noun*
protervitās
contumāx, obstinate, insolent; *noun*
contumācia
vānus, māgnificus, boastful; *noun* **vānitās,**
māgnificentia
glōria, glōriātiō, boasting; **glōriārī**, boast, be
proud of
glōriōsus, vainglorious
sē iactāre dē *Ab*, **ostentāre** *Ac*, **ēbullire** *Ac*,
boast of; *nouns* **iactātiō, ostentātiō**
salacō, braggart

38.7 prudence/rashness

prudence, caution, forethought

cōsiliūm, prudence; *cōsiliō Gpn nītī*, rely
on one's p.
prūdēs, discreet, prudent; **prūdēntia**,
prudence
sēnsus commūnis, discretion, tact

sānus, sane, rational, discreet; **sānitās**, sanity, good sense; ad *sānitātem redūcere* *Acpn*, bring to reason; ad *sānitātem revertī or redire or sē convertere*, return to one's senses

attentus, cūriōsus, dīligēns, careful, attentive, cautious; *noun dīligentia*

cautus, prōvidēns, prōvidus, cautious; *nouns cautiō, prōvidentia, prōvisiō*

providere *Actg animō*, foresee

cōnsiderātus, circumspect, cautious

sōbrius, moderate, sensible

cōnsultum, (something) well considered

rashness, indignation

vehemēns, violentus, impetuous, ardent; *noun violentia*

praeceps, hasty, rash

temerārius, incōnsiderātus, thoughtless, rash; *noun temeritās; temere*, rashly, at random

effrēnātiō, unbridled impetuosity

neglegēns, careless, inattentive, reckless

incautus, imprōvidus, imprūdēns, heedless, improvident, off one's guard; *noun imprudentia*

incōnsultus, unadvised, indiscreet

38.8 mild/severe

pleasant, mild

iūcundus, suāvis, pleasant, agreeable, charming; *nouns iūcunditās, suāvitās*

hilaris, cheerful; *noun hilaritās*

remissus, cheerful, genial

bonitās, goodness, kindness, friendliness, benevolence

grātus, pleasing, agreeable

placidus, gentle, calm

grātiōsus, popular, beloved, obliging, agreeable

commodus, prōlixus, agreeable, obliging, friendly

aequus, kind

clēmēns, lēnis, mānsuētus, gentle, lenient; *nouns clēmēntia, lēnitās, mānsuētūdō*

mītis, gentle, mild

hūmānus, kind, courteous; *noun hūmānitās*

almus, *adj.* kindly

beneficus, obliging; **beneficium**, kind deed; *beneficiō afficere*, treat well;

beneficentia, beneficence

propitiū, favourable, gracious

officiū, favour, courtesy; *mūtātiō officiōrum*, mutual services

hōc (Ac) tibi grātificor, do you this favour

benīgnus, friendly; *noun benīgnitās*

cōmis, affable, genial, courteous; *noun cōmitās*

festīvus, jovial, agreeable

facilis, benevolus, good-natured, kind; *nouns facilitās, benevolentia*

severe, harsh

sevērus, stern, austere; *noun sevērītās*

dērēctus, severe

asper, harsh, violent, cruel; *noun asperitās*

truculentus, trux, grim, harsh

atrōx, grim, truculent, severe; *noun atrōcītās*

importūnus, harsh, churlish; *noun importūnitās*

acerbus, bitter, harsh

amārus, caustic, bitter

dūrus, hard, merciless, unfeeling; *noun dūrītia*

ferreus, hard-hearted, cruel

trīstis, morose, stern; *noun trīstītia*

difficilis, ill-tempered, surly; *noun difficultās*

mōrōsus, peevish, fretful; *noun mōrōsītās*

inhūmānus, savage, churlish, discourteous; *noun inhūmānitās*

saevus, ferōx, fierce, violent, savage; *nouns saevitā, ferōcia, ferōcītās*

crūdēlis, cruel, hard-hearted; **crūdēlitās**, cruelty; *crūdēlitātem exercēre*, display c.

38.9 generous/stingy

generous, liberal

largus, bountiful, liberal; **largīrī**, give freely, lavish; *nouns largītiō, largitās*

benīgnus, obliging, liberal; *noun benīgnitās*

liberalis, mūnificus, generous, liberal; *nouns liberālītās, mūnificentia*

plēnā manū, generously

sūmptuōsus, prōdigus, extravagant, wasteful; *homō sūmptuōsus*, spendthrift

stingy, miserly

parcus, thrifty, niggardly; *noun parsimōnia*

malīgnus, tenāx, stingy, closefisted

avārus, miserly, covetous; *noun avāritia*

studium lucrī or habendī, greed

39 WORK, DUTY

39.1 work, effort

labor, work; *sē labōre dūrāre*, strengthen oneself by hard work; *nōn parcere*

labōrī, spare no pains; *verbs* **labōrāre**, **ēlaborāre** *Actg* or *Abtg*
lūcūbratiō, working by night, work done by night
opus, labour, effort; o. *efficere* or *perficere*, perform work; *diminutive* **opusculum**
cōnātus, effort, exertion; *cōnātūs* *Gpn* *infringere*, counteract one's e.
opera, work, exertion; *operam dare* *D*, bestow care on, take pains over; *operae pretium est*, it is worth while; *oleum et operam perdere*, lose one's time and trouble
mōlēs, **mōlīmen**, **mōlimentum**, exertion
contentiō, **intentiō**, effort, exertion, straining
nīti, **adnīti**, **cōnīti**, **ēnīti**, **mōlīri**, **contendere**, exert oneself, strive; *summā* or *māximā* *ope* *ēnīti*, make supreme efforts
expetere, strive for
sūdāre, work hard; *noun* **sūdor**
accūrāre, do with care
omnia summa facere, do one's utmost
prō virīli parte, **summā vī**, to the best of one's ability, with all one's might
operam nāvāre *Dtg*, work hard at, carry out energetically; *adj.* **nāvus**, busy, active
negōtium, business, trouble
occupātus, busy; **occupātiō**, occupation
coeptum, **inceptum**, undertaking
cōnficere, **perficere**, **peragere**, **absolvere**, complete, carry through
fungī *Ab*, perform (as a duty), discharge; **fūctiō**, execution
efficere, contrive, accomplish; *efficere ut subj.*, succeed in (a design); **effectiō**, **effectus**, carrying out, performance; **efficāx**, effective
Actg **retractāre**, take up again
rem prosperē gerere, win a success; **prosperē** **ēvenīre**, turn out well. *See also* 32.2
dispōnere, arrange; *noun* **dispositiō**

39.2 leisure

ōtium, leisure, ease, idleness; **ōtiōsus**, at leisure, lazy; *ōtiōsusum*, enjoy repose; **ōtiārī**, take one's leisure, be at l.
sē ab omnī occupātiōne expedire, put all work aside
cessāre, be at leisure, have nothing to do; *nouns* **cessātiō**, idling; **cessātor**, idler
tempus vacuum, leisure; **vacuus**, disengaged; *animō vacuō esse*, be disengaged; **vacāre**, be at leisure

subsicīva tempora, leisure hours
fēriātus, disengaged, idle
nihil agere, be idle

q.v. *amusement, sport, 35*

q.v. *rest, 39.9*

39.3 vain effort

nihil agere, lose one's labour, effect nothing
nihil prōdesse, be useless
rē īfectā, without result
frūstrā, in vain, without effect
nēquīquam, in vain, to no purpose
irritus, vain, useless, ineffectual

39.4 duty

mūnus, **officium**, **pēnsium**, duty; **officiōsus**, obliging, ready to serve
pius, dutiful (e.g. son, parent); *noun* **pietās**
prōvincia, official duty, charge
īūdicis (etc.) est *Inf.*, it is the duty of a judge (etc.) to ...
oportet, it is proper, (I) ought, it is (my) duty
velle, be willing
sponte meā, of my own accord
libenter, willingly
meā voluntāte, voluntarily, of my own free will

cōgere, **compellere**, **subigere**, compel

q.v. *urge, 41.6*

vī, **per vim**, forcibly
nōlle, be unwilling
invītus, unwilling
gravātē, **gravātīm**, unwillingly

39.5 easy

facilis, **prōclivis**, easy; *noun* **facilitās**
facile, easily, with ease
nullō negōtiō, without difficulty, without trouble

39.6 difficult

difficilis, difficult, hard; *noun* **difficultās**

aegrē, vix, difficulter, with difficulty
arduus, very difficult
labōriōsus, operōsus, toilsome
rēs est multae operae, it is a hard piece of work
onus, burden
spissum opus, a lengthy, laborious, troublesome piece of work
contortiō, intricacy, complication

39.7 industrious, eager; care

industrius, labōriōsus, operōsus, industrious;
noun **industria**
sēdulus, dīligēns, painstaking; *nouns*
sēdulitās, dīligentia, attentiveness
attentus, intentus, attentive, industrious
assiduus, assiduous
ācer, alacer, impiger, ērēctus, strēnuus, vegetus, eager, keen, active, energetic;
nouns **ācrimōnia**, energy; **alacritās**, enthusiasm; **impigritās**, energy, diligence
prōmptus, ready, willing
studium, zeal; **studiōsus**, keen, eager
studiīs dēditus, an eager student
nihil praetermittere quīn subj., leave nothing undone
cūra, care
cūrāre, prōcūrāre, look after, attend to
prōspicere, prōvidēre, provide for
invigilāre, be concerned for
animum attendere ad Ac, respicere, pay attention to, have regard for; *noun* **respectus**
Gpn **ratiōnibus** (interests) **cōnsulere or prōspicere or prōvidēre**, consult, provide for
ratiōnem habēre Gtg, have regard for, see to, be concerned about

39.8 idle; neglect

īgnāvus, piger, sēgnis, sōcors, idle, lazy, sluggish, dilatory; *nouns* **īgnāvia, pigritia, sēgnitia, sēgnitās, sōcordia**
nebulō, idle rascal
remissus, iners, slack, indolent; *paulō remissius*, with some want of energy
refrīgerārī, refrīgēscere, relanguēscere, grow languid
languidus, sluggish, listless, inactive
lentus, easy-going, phlegmatic; *noun* **lentitūdō**
dēsīdia, inertia, inactivity; *adj.* **dēsīdiōsus**
liquēscere, grow slack
incūria, carelessness, neglect

neglegere, dērelinquere Actg, dēesse Dtg, neglect; *nouns* **neglegentia, dērelictio**
indormīre Dtg, be careless over
id facere intermīsīt, he has neglected to do it
omittere, leave undone (designedly)
praetermittere, leave undone (undesignedly); *praetermissa repetere*, make good what had been left undone
posthabēre, postpōnere, neglect, sacrifice

39.9 weariness, rest

lassitūdō, weariness, fatigue
dēfetīscī, grow weary, be exhausted
fessus, dēfessus, plp lassus, weary, tired
fatīgātus, dēfatīgātus, cōnfectus (labōre), exhausted; *nouns* **fatīgatiō, dēfatīgatiō**
languēre, be faint, wearied; **languēscere**, grow faint
quiēscere, rest, leave off; *noun* **quiēs**; *sē quiētī dare or trādere, quiētem capere*, take rest; *adj.* **quiētus**, at rest
acquiēscere, conquiēscere, repose, find rest
requiēs, rest, recreation; *verb* **requiēscere**
reficere, restore, refresh; *sē r.*, rest
tranquillitās, peacefulness

40 LEARNING, KNOWLEDGE

40.11 wisdom, knowledge

scientia, knowledge; **scīre**, know
artis praecepta, theory
cōgnitiō, knowledge, acquaintance (with things)
omnis doctrīna, every branch of learning
disciplīna, knowledge, science, whatever is taught
sapientia, wisdom, discernment, intelligence, philosophy; *doctōrēs sapientiae*, philosophers; *adj.* **sapiēns**
sapere, be wise
resipīscere, recover sense
omnēs ineptiās excutere, put away childish things
ēruditiō, learning, knowledge
studium, study; *studiīs obsequī or sē imbuere, devote oneself to s.; in aliquod s. incumbere*, devote oneself to some s.
litterae, scholarship, learning; *litterārum tractātiō*, occupation with l.; *sē litterīs (Ab) or in litterās abdere or sē litterīs involvere*, bury oneself in l.;

tinctus litteris, steeped in l., a thorough scholar

philosophia, philosophy; **philosophus**, **sapiens**, philosopher; **philosophiam profiteri**, **philosophari**, be a philosopher by profession; *philosophiae vacare*, devote oneself to p.

secta, **haeresis**, philosophical school

sophistēs, sophist

prudentia, (practical) prudence, good sense; *adj.* **prudens**

sensus communis, common sense

vir magni consilii or **iudicio firmo praeditus**, man of sound judgment

peritia, **usus**, experience, practical knowledge

peritus, **imbutus usu**, experienced

scitus, *usu. poet. of persons*, shrewd, wise, skilful

curiōsus, desirous of knowing, inquisitive; *noun* **curiōsitas**

astutus, **argutus**, shrewd; *noun* **argutiae**, wit, subtlety, shrewdness

versutus, adroit, ingenious

callidus, **sollers**, clever, expert; **sollertia**, shrewdness, ingenuity, dexterity

subtilis, subtle; *noun* **subtilitas**

perspicax, acute, penetrating

q.v. caution, forethought, 38.7

doctus, learned, versed, experienced

studiōsus, studious, learned

eruditus, learned, well-informed, experienced

philologus, learned, scholarly; *as noun*, scholar, savant; **philologia**, love of learning

speculator, inquirer, investigator

gnarus, **sciens**, skilful, expert

acutus, **sagax**, shrewd, sagacious; *nouns* **acumen**, **sagacitas**

40.12 folly, ignorance

inscientia, ignorance, inexperience

inscitia, stupidity, incompetence

nescire litteras, be without a liberal education

barbarus, ignorant; *nouns* **barbaria**, **barbariēs**

imperitus, inexperienced, ignorant

in philosophia inermis, not versed in p.

idiota, ignorant person, layman

incallidus, unintelligent

hebes, **stupidus**, **stultus**, **fatuus**, **stolidus**, **inscitus**, **tardus**, **bardus**, dull, stupid; *nouns* **stupor**, **stultitia**, **fatuitas**, **inscitia**, **tarditas**

desipere, be foolish

baro, fool

insipiens, unwise, foolish; *noun* **insipientia**

insanus, foolish; **insania**, folly

absurdus, **ineptus**, silly, absurd, senseless, irrational; **ineptiae**, nonsense, trifling

socors, silly, thoughtless; *noun* **socordia**

insulsus, insipid, silly, absurd; *noun* **insulstas**

infacetus, **frigidus**, **plumbeus**, dull, stupid

40.13 sly, cunning, crafty

vafer, crafty, artful, subtle

astutus, **astutiae**, *usu. in bad sense*

argutus, **argutiae**, *usu. in bad sense*

sollers, *not in bad sense; but* **sollertia** *sometimes in bad sense*

callidus, *also in bad sense; noun* **calliditas**, *usu. in bad sense*

veterator, crafty old fellow

q.v. rashness, indiscretion, 38.8

q.v. fraud, 47.4

40.14 investigate

indagare, **investigare**, track, investigate; *nouns* **indagatio**, **investigatio**

quaerere, inquire, investigate; *noun* **quaestio**

inquirere, investigate, examine

pertemptare, inquire into

pertractare, investigate, study

recognoscere, investigate, inspect

curiōsus ad investigandum, an eager investigator

40.21 school; teacher

disciplina, **doctrina**, teaching, training

educare, **educere**, educate; *homō liberāliter educatus*, a well-educated man

ludus, **schola**, **gymnasium**, school

auditorium, lecture room

magister, master

praeceptor, teacher

professor, public teacher, professor

grammaticus, teacher of language and literature, scholar

sella, teacher's chair

īnstituere, īnstruere, īnfōrmāre, docēre, praecipere (e.g. *dē arte dicendī*), **ērudire, artibus īficere (puerum)**, teach, instruct; *nouns* **īnstitūtīō, ērudītīō**
ēdocēre, teach thoroughly
(iuvenēs) ad studium incitāre, urge to work
praeceptum, nōrma, rule, precept
fōrmula, rule, method
rēgula, rule, model, pattern
ratiō, system, doctrine, tenet; *ratiōne et viā*, systematically
inventa, doctrines, opinions
initia P, first principles
explicāre, set forth, explain; *rēs involūtās e.*, e. what is complicated; *nouns* **explicātīō, explicātor**; *adj.* **inexplicābilis**
interpretārī, explain; *noun* **interpretātīō**
explānāre, explain; *nouns* **explānātīō, explānātor**
elementa P, rudiments

40.22 pupil

discipulus, -a, alumnus, -a, pupil
discere, learn; **ēdiscere**, learn by heart, learn thoroughly; **condiscere**, learn carefully
tīrō, beginner
rudis, unskilled, inexperienced
nōscere, learn; **pernōscere**, come to know well
cōgnōscere, learn, get to know, investigate, study
studēre D, learn, apply oneself to
prōcēdere, make progress, e.g. in *philosophiā*; *noun* **prōcessus**
in Abtg aliquid (multum) prōficere, make some (much) progress
prōgressūs facere in studiīs, get on with one's studies
paulum prōgressus, having made some headway
commentārī, meditārī, study
ingenium, ability; *i.* **subigere**, train, school the mind; *ingeniō valēre*, be talented; *prīnceps ingeniī*, of unusual ability
docilis, easily taught; *noun* **docilitās**;
indocilis, learning with difficulty
ferula, rod

q.v. industrious, idle, 39.7, 39.8

40.31 culture

cultūra, culture

cultus, civilisation, refinement; *animī c.*, intellectual culture, mental discipline
sapor, taste, refinement
polītus, refined, cultivated
ingenium excolere, mānsuēfacere, subigere, cultivate, train, school the mind
cultus (animus), polished, refined
litterae Latīnae, Roman literature; *litterīs studēre*, study literature
litterātus, accomplished, scholarly
vir doctus, scholar
hūmānus, well-informed, learned; **hūmānitās**, liberal education, refinement

q.v. wise, learned, 40.11

40.32 lack of culture

rudis, dūrus, unpolished, uncultivated
horridus, uncouth, unpolished
agrestis, boorish, uncultivated
crassus, dull, uncultivated
homō vāstus, a rough, unpolished fellow
impolītus, unrefined, inelegant
homō incultus or sine sapōre, unpolished, unrefined man
omnis ēruditiōnis expers, illiterate
illitterātus, uneducated, illiterate
indoctus, inērudītus, ignorant, uninstructed
omnium rērum īnsciūs, completely ignorant
iners, unskilled; *noun* **inertia**

q.v. foolish, ignorant, 40.12

40.4 activities of the mind

40.41 thought

mēns, mind; *mihi in mentem venit or occurrit*, it occurs to me; *mentem acuere*, sharpen the intellect; *mentī imprimere or mandāre*, impress on the mind; *incidere in mentem*, occur to the mind
animus ad Actg attendere or in or ad Actg intendere, turn one's thoughts to, give heed to; *in animō imprimere*, impress on the mind; *animō īnfīxus*, impressed on the mind; *animus mōbilis*, active mind; *percussit animum*, it struck me; *praesentia animī*, presence of mind
illud mihi succurrit, it comes into my mind
impressiō, impression

cōgitāre, think, meditate; *tōtō pectore c.*, think hard, deeply; **cōgitātiō**, thought, meditation

reor, think

animadvertere, heed, direct the mind to

attentus, attentive, intent on

cōnsiderāre, animō volvere (or volūtāre),

perpendere, reputāre, dēliberāre, agitāre

in mente, exāmināre, meditārī,

ponderāre, recolere, ponder, consider;

nouns cōnsiderātiō, dēliberātiō, meditātiō;

dēliberābundus, deep in thought

cōgitātiōnem ad Ac dirigere, give one's mind to

rem animō perlūstrāre, survey, consider

ratiōcinārī, reason, draw conclusions;

ratiōcinātiō, logical conclusion

conclūdere, infer, draw conclusion; *noun*

conclūsio

sequitur, ut subj., it follows (logically) that

cōgnitiō, study, investigation

crēdere, believe; *vix crēdī potest*, it is scarcely credible

incrēdibile dictū est, it sounds incredible

probābilis, credible

exīstimāre, judge, suppose; *noun exīstimātiō*

mētīrī, pendere, expendere, judge, estimate

animō or mente concipere, animō fingere, imagine, conceive, comprehend, realise

mente complectī, grasp, comprehend

cōgitātiōne Actg dēpingere, imagine

nōtiō, infōrmatiō, idea, conception

conicere, coniectāre, suspicārī, suspiciōne

attingere or assequī, coniectūrā cōsequī,

guess, conjecture; **coniectūra**, guess, conjecture

suspiciō, conjecture, (vague) idea

intellegere, animō or mente comprehendere,

animō amplectī, understand; *penitus*

intellegere Actg, have a thorough grasp

of; *nouns intellegentia, comprehēnsiō*

percipere, perceive, understand; *noun*

perceptiō

agnōscere, recognise

40.42 opinion/error

opinion

sententia, opinion, judgment; *meā sententiā,*

in my opinion; esse, haerēre, manēre,

permanēre, perseverāre, perstāre in

eādem sententiā, remain of the same

opinion

opīniō, opinion, conjecture, belief

cōgitātiō, opinion, judgment

putāre, iūdicāre, cēnsēre, arbitrārī, opīnārī,

be of opinion, judge, believe, think

placet mihi, I am of opinion, believe

cum Mārcō sentīre, agree with M.; *ā Mārcō*

sentīre, aliter sentīre ac Mārcus,

hold a different view from M.'s, differ from

M.

eadem sentīre, hold the same sentiments

assentīre Dpn, agree with

nullō recūsante, with no dissentient

cōnsentīre cum Ab, be in agreement with;

cōnsentiunt ūnō ōre omnēs, they are

unanimous; parum cōnsentiō cum Ab, do

not agree with

inter sē discrepāre or dissentīre, dissidēre,

disagree, be of different opinions; *nouns*

dissēnsiō, discrepantia

error

minus (or haud rēctē) intellegere,

misunderstand

cōfundere, disconcert, perplex

error, errātum, mistake; *errōribus*

implicārī, be involved in e.; animum in

errōrem indūcere, lead astray; errōrem

fēcī, I was mistaken; Dpn errōrem

ēripere, tollere, extorquēre, remove

e.; errōrem dēpōnere, abandon e.; verb

errāre

mendum, fault, blunder; *adj. mendōsus*

mentiēns, fallacy

in fraudem incidere or dēlābī, make a

mistake

litūra, correction

corrīgere, ēmendāre, correct; *nouns*

corrēctiō, ēmendātiō

q.v. true, false, 43

40.43 know/evident

know, discover, be certain

scīre, know; *certō scīre*, know for a fact, be certain

sentīre, be or become aware of; *quod sēnsērim*, as far as I am aware

nōvisse, know; **nōtītia**, acquaintance, knowledge

nōtus, nōbilis, known, notorious; *satis n.*, well known; **nōbilitāre**, make famous or notorious

rem manū tenēre, have a sure knowledge of

certus, certain; *Actg certum or prō certō*

habēre or certum scīre, know for sure

explōrātus, established, certain, sure
stabilis, certain, definite
certē, certō, sine dubiō, sine ūllā dubitātiōne, without doubt
profectō, certainly, for sure, indeed
cōgnōscere, discover (facts)
perspicere, recognise, come to know
comperīre, reperīre, find out, ascertain;
compertum habeo (or mihi est), I know well, attain to certainty
cōnstat, it is well known; *c. inter omnēs*, it is allowed, agreed by all, generally accepted

clear, plain, evident

liquet, manifestum est, it is clear
expressus, visible, clear, plain
(satis) appāret, it is evident; **apertē**, openly, plainly
perspicuus, clear, manifest; *noun perspicuitās*
clārus, plain, evident; **praeclārus**, very clear
patēre, be clear, evident
plānus, plain; *plānum facere*, make clear;
plānē, clearly, distinctly

40.44 not know, be uncertain

nescīre, īgnōrāre, not know, be unaware;
noun īgnōrātiō
īgnārus, imprūdēns, unaware; *noun imprudentia*
īnscius, nescius, not knowing, ignorant; *nōn sum īnscius*, I am well aware
mē īnsciō, mē īnsciente, without my knowledge
īgnōtus, incōgnitus, unknown
vagus, vague, indefinite
fallere, escape notice
quid sit ambigitur, it is uncertain; **ambiguus**, uncertain
dubitāre, doubt; *dubitārī potest*, it is open to question; **dubitātiō**, uncertainty; **dubius**, wavering, doubtful; *in dubium venīre*, become doubtful
anceps, doubtful, uncertain; *haud a.*, decisive
vānus, false, untrustworthy; *noun vānitās*
obscurus, indistinct, unintelligible; *noun obscuritās*
adumbrātus, sketched, outlined, indistinct;
noun adumbrātiō
haesitāre, be at a loss; *noun haesitātiō*
flūctuāre, waver, be uncertain
animī or animō pendere, be perplexed, in suspense
titubāre, waver, falter, be embarrassed
forte, fortāsse, forsitan (*with subj.*), perhaps

vērī similis, probable; **vērī similiter**, probably;
vērī similitūdō, probability

40.45 remember

meminisse, commemorāre, reminiscī, recordārī, memoriā tenere or retinere or cūstōdīre, in memoriā redigere, repetere Ac in memoriā or memoriā G, recōgnōscere, reducere in memoriā, call to mind, recollect
memoriā redintegrāre, refresh the m.
in memoriā penitus īnsidere, be firmly fixed in the mind
memoriae mandāre, impress on the mind
memoriae prōdere, record
memoriā G prōdere, hand down
venit mihi in mentem, animō teneō, I recollect
memoria, memory; *memoriā vigere*, have a good memory
commemorātiō, remembrance
memor, mindful; **memoriter**, from memory
recordātiō, recollection, remembrance
monere, admonere, remind; *noun monitiō*
commemorāre, remind of
commonere, commonefacere, remind forcibly

40.46 forget

obliviscī, forget; noun obliuio; in obliuionem G venio or capit me obliuio G, forget; obliuione obrui, in obliuione iacere, be forgotten; obliuionī dare, consign to oblivion; ab obliuione vindicare, rescue from oblivion
dēponere ex memoriā, forget
excidere, escape (memory); *mihi ista exciderant*, I had forgotten these things
memoriā dilābi, escape the memory
reī memoriā tollere, erase from the memory
nihil tē effugiet, you will forget nothing
in praeteritīs relinquere, forget to mention
immemor, obliuiosus, forgetful; *immemor sum*, forget

40.51 cause, reason

cūr? quid? quāre? quamobrem? why?
causa, cause; *causae D esse*, be the cause of;
causam inferre, allege c.
facere, facessere or efficere Ac or ut subj., cause, bring about

per mē fit, ut *subj.*, I am the cause of
ratio, ground, motive, reason; **rationcula**,
 poor, inadequate reason
per mē stat, quōminus *subj.* I am the cause of
nōn or nihil habeo, quod *subj.*, I have no
 reason to
est cūr or quod *subj.*, there is cause to ...
nihil est quod (cūr, quamobrem) *subj.*, there
 is no reason why
ratio, reason, motive
mē auctore, at my suggestion, instigation
frustrā Actg facere, do without good cause,
 groundlessly
immeritō accūsare, accuse undeservedly,
 without cause
meritō, deservedly, with good cause

40.52 effect

quia, quod, propterea quod or quia, because
ob Ac, propter Ac, on account of
eō, therefore, for that reason
effectus, effect
eventum, eventus, consequence, result, issue
fētus, fruit, produce, e.g. animi
frūgēs (e.g. *industriāe*), result
fructum Gtg or ex Abtg percipere or capere,
 reap the fruit of; fructum cōsequi, obtain
 a result, return

q.v. good and bad fortune, 32.2, 32.3

40.61 plan

cōsiliū, plan; c. *capere*, *inire*, adopt or
 form a p.; c. *frangere*, spoil, bring to
 nought a p.
ratio, plan; *ratione et viā*, methodically
dēscriptus, well planned
dispositē, methodically
in animō habeo, mihi in animō est, I intend
Actg animō intendere, plan
quid tendit? what is his object?
animō or cum animō or in mente or sēcum
agitāre Ac or dē Ab, intend, plan
scelus concipere, plan a crime
cōgitāre, intend, plan; *noun cōgitatiō*
meditārī with inf., intend
īstitūtum, settled plan, course
prōpositum, plan, purpose; p. *tenere*, keep
 to one's plan; p. *assequi*, attain one's plan
eā or hāc mente, with this intention
cōsultō, dē industriā, with deliberation, by
 design, on purpose

eō cōsiliō, ut ..., with the intention of
īnsidiae, artēs, schemes (to deceive), trickery

40.62 without plan

cōfūsus, confused, muddled; *noun cōfusiō*
inconditus, irregular, without order
nūllā ratione, without method
cāsū, forte, fortuitō, temere, temere ac
fortuitō, casually, by chance, at random
incōsultē, thoughtlessly

40.7 books

liber, book; *librōs edere, scripta forās*
dare, publish
scriptum, something written; *P scripta*,
 books, works, treatises
volūmen, book (rolled), volume
cōdex, book (*with flat leaves*)
pugillārēs P, libellus, notebook
tabella, document, record
commentārii, memoirs
libellus, cōscriptiō, treatise
pāgina, page

legere, read; **perlegere**, read through; **vorāre**,
 read eagerly; **pervolūtāre**, read carefully;
lēctiō, reading, perusal; **lēctor**, reader
recitāre, read out
anagnōstēs, reader
ēvolvere or explicāre, (unfold and) read; *noun*
ēvolūtiō
scriptor, author
compōnere, cōscribere (*librum,*
epistulam), compose, write
stilus, composition, style of composition;
artifex s., artistic style

bibliothēca, library
librārius, late, bookseller
taberna librāria, bookshop
capsa, scrīnium, cista, librārium, pēgma,
 bookcase
umbilicus, projecting end of cylinder on which
 book was rolled

40.8 writing

scribere, write; *apertē s.*, write freely,
 without reserve

dēscribere, copy, transcribe, draw
exscribere, copy
perscribere, write down in full, record accurately; **perscriptiō**, record, entry
litteris mandāre, commit to writing
litūra, erasure; **stilum vertere**, erase, correct
inscribere *Dtg* or **in Abtg**, write in or on; *noun*
inscriptiō
titulus, inscription, title
exarāre, jot down
trāscribere, **trāferre (in tabulās)**, copy
in tabulās, **in cōdicem referre**, enter, register
rēs per scriptūram amplectī, treat in writing
scriba, (public) writer, secretary
librārius, transcriber of books, copyist, secretary
ā manū servus, *late*, secretary

membrāna, parchment
charta, paper
calamus, (reed) pen; *calamum sūmere*, take up one's p.
ātrāmentum, ink
tabula, **tabella**, (wax-covered) slate, writing tablet
cēra, writing-tablet
triplicēs, writing tablet with three leaves
stilus, iron pen, style; *stilum vertere*, erase
dictāre, dictate

q.v. prose, 42.1

q.v. verse, 42.2

q.v. language, 42.3

40.9 letters

litterae P, letter; *litterās mittere ad Acpn*, send a l. to; *Dpn litterās remittere*, write a reply to; *litterās dare*, post a l.; *litterās reddere*, deliver a l.; *litterae mihi ā Mārcō allātae sunt*, I have received a l. from M.; *litterās dare et accipere*, correspond; *litteris perfertur ad mē*, I am informed by l.; *Hās litterās Nōnis Mārtiis scribēbam* (I am writing; in Latin, past tense, from recipient's point of view) *atque ōrō* (entreaty remains a present wish) *tē, ut quam primum rescribās*

epistula, letter; *Acpn longīs epistulis obtundere*, molest with lengthy l.; *epistulārum cōsuētūdō*, correspondence
cōdicillī P, note, short letter
diem in epistulā ascribere, add the date
epistulam patrī inscribere, address letter to one's father
interiōre epistulā, in the body of the letter
epistulam conclūdere, end letter; **clausula**, conclusion of letter
obsignāre or signāre epistulam, seal letter
respondēre, rescribere, answer
litterās or respōsum reddere, give an a.; *r. ferre*, receive an a.; *r. referre*, bring an a.
tabellārius, letter-carrier, postman, courier

SVBEEV (sī valēs bene est ego valeō), formula at beginning of letters
impertit tibi multam salūtem, sends you his kind regards
Mārcum velim salvēre iubeās, my kind regard to M.
Dpn plūrimam salūtem referre, reciprocate good wishes
Valē or cūrā ut valeās or fac valeās, formula at end of letters
sum vester tōtus, yours sincerely

41 VOICE, SPEECH

41.11

vōx, voice, *also* word; *clārā (or māgnā) vōce*, with a loud v.; *summissā vōce*, softly; *pressā, suppressā vōce*, in a subdued, low voice; *vōcem attenuāre*, speak falsetto; *vōcem profundere*, utter a word
loquī, speak, talk; *pūrē et Latīnē loquī*, speak plainly, right out, not to beat about the bush; **locūtiō**, speaking, language
grande genus loquendī, sublime language; **grandiloquus**, speaking loftily, grandiloquent
ūber (in dīcendō), copious; *noun ūbertās subtiliter dīcere*, speak simply; *noun subtilitās*
loquāx, linguā prōptus, talkative; *noun loquācītās*
redundāns, verbose
nōn inops verbīs, of ready speech
mōbilitās linguae, volubility

taciturnus, not talkative, laconic; *noun* **taciturnitas**

verbum, word; ad v., word for word, literally, *also* *verbum ē (ex) verbō* (of a single word), *verbum prō verbō* (of a passage); *ūnō verbō*, *paucis verbis*, briefly; *multis verbis*, at great length; *verbis pressus*, precise; *verba sonantiōra*, well-sounding words; *aucupium verbōrum*, quibbling

syllaba, syllable

vocābulum, word, designation

lingua, **ōrātiō**, speech, language

convertere (librum ē Graecō in Latīnum), translate

dēclāmāre, practise speaking, declaim;

dēclāmitāre, practise declamation; *nouns*

dēclāmātiō, **dēclāmātor**

prōnūntiāre, recite

ēloquī, speak out, speak plainly, declare

appellātiō, pronunciation

lentus in dīcendō, drawling

litterās dilātāre, drawl

mussāre, mutter

litteram obscūrāre, slur a letter (in pronouncing)

titubāre, **balbūtīre**, **linguā haerēre**, stutter;

haesitantia linguae, stuttering; *adj.* **balbus**

hālucinārī, **inānī vōce sonāre**, talk idly, talk nonsense

effūtīre, blab out, chatter

garrīre, chat, talk nonsense

īnfāns, unable to speak, speechless

41.12

clāmāre, **exclāmāre**, **inclāmāre**, **prōclāmāre**,

shout; *clāmātum est*, a cry was raised;

nouns **clāmor**, **exclāmātiō**, shout; *clāmor*

fit, there is a shout; *clāmōrem tollere*,

ēdere, raise a shout; *laetantium or*

exsultantium c., shouts of joy, triumph;

clāmor excitātus, loud shouting;

clāmātor, bawler

conclāmāre, shout together, raise a cry; *māgnā vōce c.*, roar

reclāmāre, cry out against

clāmitāre, call violently or loudly

vōcem obtundere, shout oneself hoarse

ululāre, howl, yell, shriek

vāgīre, cry (of babies), squall

personāre, call out

praedicāre, proclaim, publish; **praedicātiō**, announcement

acclāmāre, **obstreperere**, shout at, disapprove (accl. *also* applaud); *noun* **acclāmātiō**

advocāre, call to (espec. for help or advice)

dēvocāre, call down or away

sēvocāre, **āvocāre**, call away or aside

revocāre, call back

excīre, call forth

vōciferārī, roar, scream, bawl

gemere, groan; **ingemiscere** *D or in Ab*, groan over; *noun* **gemitus**

susurrāre, whisper, mutter; *noun* **susurrus**

summissā vōce, softly; **submissiō** (e.g. *vōcis, ōrātiōnis*), lowering (of voice), quiet manner (of speech)

41.13 song

canere, **cantāre**, sing; **cantitāre**, sing often

cantor, singer

cantus, **carmen**, song, melody; *carmen canere, dīcere*

cantilēna, sing-song

concinere, sing together; *noun* **concentus**, song, harmony

41.21

dīcere, say, speak; *praecisē, pressē d.*, speak concisely; *difficile (prōclive) dictū*, hard (easy) to say; *solūtissimus in dīcendō*, a very ready speaker; **dictiō**, delivery

dictum, saying; *dicta P*, words

verbum or verba facere, **verba habēre**, speak

aiō, inquam, I say

ēnūntiāre, declare, express

indīcere, declare

nōmen G ēdere, state the name of

recitāre, recite; *nouns* **recitātiō**, **recitātor**

ōrātiō, speech, style; *ōrātiōnem commentārī, comparāre, compōnere, facere,*

cōnficere, compose a speech; *ōrātiōnem*

habēre apud Ac, make a speech before

ēlocūtiō, oratorical delivery, elocution

īnfantia, want of eloquence

exōrdium, introduction (of speech)

perōrāre, conclude a speech; *noun* **perōrātiō**

ōrātor, speaker

cōntiō, public meeting; *cōntiōnem habēre*, address a p. m.; *advocāre cōntiōnem*, summon a p. m.

cōntiōnārī, harangue, address

verba apud populum facere, address the people

41.22

sermō, conversation, discussion;
sermunculus, tittle-tattle
contrōversia, dispute, debate; *contrōversiam*
dirimere or minuere, adjust or settle a
dispute
colloquī, converse, have a conference with;
colloquium, conversation, conference; *ad*
c. admittere, receive in audience; *c.*
dirimere, break up *c.*
fatīgāre *Acpn verbīs*, importune
cōnsilium, consultation, deliberation; *Acpn in*
c. advocāre, call in; *cōnsiliīs*
interesse, take part in *c.*; **cōnsiliārī**,
consult, take counsel
disserere, **disputāre**, **disceptāre**, discuss,
debate; *nouns disputātiō, disceptātiō*
tractāre, handle, discuss

41.23 oratory

ars dīcendī, eloquence, oratory; **ratiō dīcendī**,
rhētorica (*S or P*), **rhētoricē**, rhetoric;
dīcendī magister, **rhētor**, teacher of
rhetoric; **palaestra**, school of rhetoric
suggestum, platform, stage
fācundus (*late*), fluent, eloquent; *noun*
fācundia (*late*)
ēloquī, speak as an orator, eloquently;
ēloquēns, eloquent; *noun ēloquentia*; *dare*
sē studiō ēloquentiae, devote oneself to
the study of *e.*
facilis ad dīcendum, ready of speech
disertus, fluent
suāvis, agreeable, attractive; *noun suāvitās*
festīvus, humorous, witty; *noun festīvitās*
dīcāx, witty, sarcastic
lepidus, smart, witty; *noun lepor*
urbānus, elegant, witty, facetious; *noun*
urbānitās
facētus, humorous, facetious; **facētia**, wit,
pleasantry, witticisms
salsus, acute, witty; **sāl**, wit, facetiousness,
drollery, sarcasm

41.31 address, question

alloquī, address; *noun alloquium*
adīre ad *Ac*, address (in speech or writing)
appellāre, address, accost
rogāre, **interrogāre**, **scīscitārī**, ask, inquire;
interrogandō urgēre, beset with
questions; *noun interrogātiō*

quaerere, ask, inquire; *illud quaeritur*, the
real question is
percontārī, question strictly, investigate; *noun*
percontātiō
vocāre, call; **vocātus**, calling, invocation
arcessere, summon
convocāre, **ēvocāre**, call together

41.32 answer

respondēre *Dpn*, answer, reply to; *noun*
respōnsum; *r. reddere*, give an answer;
r. ab Abpn ferre, receive an answer from
referre, reply
oppōnere, object, retort
cōnfūtāre, **redarguere**, **refellere**, **refūtāre**,
revincere, disprove, confute, contradict;
noun refūtātiō
obloquī, contradict
īnfitiārī, **īnfitiās ire**, deny, disown

41.33 greeting

salūs, salutation, greeting; *verb salūtāre*
quid agis? how are you?
Mārcum meum salūtā nostrīs verbīs, greet
my friend M. on my behalf, give him my
kind regards
salūtem mittere per *Ac*, send greeting by
occursātiō, greeting
salvē, **salvētō**, **salvēte**, how do you do?
salvēre iubeō, I bid you good day; *Mārcum*
iubē salvēre, greet M. for me
valē or valeās, good-bye; *colloquially*, **bene**
valē, **bene ambulā**
valēre iubeō or dīcō, *or valedīcō*, I bid good-
bye
avē, **avētō**, **avēte**, *and salvus sīs*, *used both at*
meeting and parting

41.4 declare

affirmāre, **cōnfirmāre**, assert, declare,
corroborate; *nouns affirmātiō, cōnfirmātiō*
assevērāre, maintain, assure
dēmōnstrāre, **ostendere**, point out, state; *noun*
dēmōnstrātiō
dictitāre, assert, allege, pretend
dēclārāre, show, declare, explain, testify;
noun dēclārātiō
profitērī, declare openly
mentiō, mention; *mentiōnem facere*, mention
afferre, assert

relate, announce

narrāre, sequi, memorāre, commemorāre, trādere, tell, relate, recount
ēnarrāre, recount fully, explain in detail
narrātiō, historia, story, narrative
propōnere, expōnere, explicāre, exsequi, set forth, set before; *nouns explicātiō, expositiō*
referre, report, relate
nūntiāre, prōnūntiāre, announce, report;
nūntius, messenger, message;
prōnūntiātor, narrator
dēnūntiāre, announce (officially); *noun dēnūntiātiō*
rēs perfertur, it is announced
renūntiāre, proclaim, announce (officially);
noun renūntiātiō

q.v. history, 42.1

41.5 promise

prōmittere, pollicērī, recipere, promise;
nouns prōmissum, prōmissiō (pollicitātiō not Ci); *prōmissa facere*, make p.;
prōmissa ab Abpn exigere, exact p.
spondēre, promise (solemnly), pledge oneself;
noun spōnsiō
fidem dare Dpn dē Abtg or inter sē, promise
fidem suam in Actg interpōnere, pledge one's word
fidem praestāre, fidem suam liberāre, fidem or prōmissa servāre, prōmissa patrāre, prōmissis stāre, keep one's word
impleō quod pollicitus sum, carry out my promise
fidem fallere or frangere or violāre, break one's promise
fidem hostī datam fallere, break one's parole

41.61 persuade, urge

suādēre, persuādēre, persuade, urge upon, advocate; *frātrī illud persuāsīt; mihi persuāsum est, persuāsum habēō*, I am convinced; *persuādērī mihi nōn potest*, I cannot be persuaded; *noun persuāsiō*
impellere Acpn ad or in Actg, persuade, urge to; *nouns impulsīō, impulsus*
addūcere, induce, persuade
Acpn ad or in suam sententiam perdūcere, win over
monēre, admonēre, praemonēre, advise, admonish, warn; *nouns monitiō, admonitiō*;
monita, admonitions

hortārī, adhortārī, cohortārī, incitāre, lacessere, exhort, urge; *adhortantis vōx*, words of encouragement; *nouns hortātiō, adhortātiō, cohortātiō, hortātor, adhortātor; incitātiō*, inciting;
incitāmentum, incentive
instīgāre, instinguere, urge, incite; *noun instīnctus*

41.62 dissuade, threaten

dissuādēre, dēhortārī, dissuade, advise against
Acpn dē sententiā movēre or ā prōpositō flectere, dissuade
praedixit, nē id faceret, he warned him not to do it
minārī, minitārī, threaten; **minae**, threats;
minās iactāre, throw out threats; **minātiō**, threat; **mināx**, threatening
impendere Dpn or in Acpn imminēre Dpn, threaten (of danger, etc.)
dēnūntiāre, threaten, denounce
mortem prōpōnere, threaten with death

41.71 praise

laus, praise; *laude afficere*, praise; *omnī laude cumulāre*, heap praises on; *laudibus in caelum ferre or (ad caelum) efferre, illūstrāre, extol*; *laudēs Gpn in astra tollere*, praise exceedingly; *laudem ex Abtg excipere*, get credit for; *summam Dpn laudem tribuere*, praise extremely
laudāre, praise; **collaudāre**, praise very much, extol; *nouns laudātiō, collaudātiō*, commendation, eulogy; **laudātor**, one who praises; *adj. laudābilis*, praiseworthy
ōrnāre, celebrāre, praedicāre, ad caelum extollere, praise, extol, sound the praises of; *noun praedicātiō*
praecōnium Dpn tribuere, eulogise
assentārī, flatter; *nouns assentātiō, assentātor*
adulārī, flatter, fawn upon; *nouns adulātiō, adulātor*
blandus, flattering; *verb blandīrī; nouns blanditia, blandimentum*
plaudere, applaud, approve; **plausus**, acclamation
approbāre, probāre, approve, recommend; *tibi probātur*, it is approved by you; *nouns approbātiō, approbātor*
comprobāre, approve, assent to, sanction

41.72 blame, abuse

culpa, blame; *verb culpāre*
probrum, reproach, insult
invehī in Ac, attack (in words)
accūsāre, compellāre, incūsāre, increpāre, increpitāre, insectārī, reprehendere, insequī, obiūrgāre, blame, rebuke, censure, tax with; **animadversio, compellatiō, reprehensio, insectatiō, obiurgatiō**, blame
improbāre, disapprove, blame
condemnāre *Acpn G* fault, blame, e.g. *aliquem inertiae*
exagitāre *Actg Gpn*, attack, censure
nihil tēcum dē hīs rēbus expostulō, I find no fault with you on this score; **expostulatiō**, complaint
vituperāre, find fault with, censure, disparage; *nouns vituperatiō, vituperator*
crīminārī, calumniate
maledicere, abuse, slander; **maledicus**, scurrilous, slanderous; **maledicta P**, abuse, slander; **tē malēdictīs onerō**, heap abuse on you
dētrahere, disparage
fāmam Gpn inquināre, besmirch a man's good name
obtrectāre D, disparage, underrate; *nouns obtrectatiō, obtrector*
de Gpn fāmā dētrahere, disparage, impair the credit of
obicere, obiectāre, exprobrāre *Actg Dpn*, taunt with, reproach; *nouns obiectatiō, exprobratiō*
īnsultāre, taunt, abuse
īnsimulāre *Acpn Gtg*, tax with (*spec. falsely*)
hōc tibi vitiō vertō or dō, impute this to you as a fault
tē Gtg damnō, censure you for
notāre, censure, reprimand
contumēlia, abuse, insult, invective; *Acpn verbōrum contumēliis lacerāre*, abuse violently; *aperire Acpn contumēliis*, overwhelm with abuse; **contumēliōsus**, abusive
convīcium, abuse, reproach, censure

41.8 silence

silēre, be silent (make no noise); *noun silentium*; *s. facere*, observe silence; *adv. silentiō*, in silence, silently
tacēre, reticēre, be silent (not speak); *noun reticentia*
obmūtēscere, become dumb

tacitus, silent; *mē tacitō*, if I say nothing
mūtus, dumb, silent
Actg silentiō praeterire, pass over in silence
verba mē dēficiunt, orātiō mē dēficit, words fail me
conticēscere, cease speaking, hold one's peace
reticēre, be silent; *noun reticentia*
linguam continēre or moderārī, keep silent

41.91 topic and digression

materia, subject-matter, topic
argūmentum, subject, theme
prōpositum, prōpositiō, theme; *ā prōpositō aberrāre or ēgredi*, digress from the main point; *ad prōpositum redire or reverti*, return to the m. p.
quaestiō, subject of investigation
dēgredi, digredi, digress; *noun digressiō*
orātiō longius excurrit, there is a long digression; **excursiō, excursus**, digression
dēclīnatiō, digression
redeāmus ad illud unde dēvertimus, let us take up our main point after the digression

41.92 interrupt, pause

interpellāre, interrupt; *noun interpellatiō*
interrumpere (e.g. *orātiōnem*), break off
intervenire Dtg, interrupt; *noun interventor*
intermittere, allow to intervene; *trīduō intermissō*, after an interval of three days;
intermissiō, pause, interval
intervallum, interval, pause; *sine intervallō*, uninterrupted

42.1 prose

verba or orātiō solūta, prose
narratiō, narrative
historia, narrative, tale, story; history
apologus, story, fairy tale, fable
fābula, story (fiction); **fābella**, short story
narrātor, story-teller
narrātor, historicus, rērum scriptor, historian
rēs gestae, history; *r. g. Rōmānōrum*, Roman h.
annāles, records
fāstī, chronicle
auctor, author (*spec. historian*)

42.2 verse

versus, verse, poetry
carmen, poem; poetry
poēma, poem, *P*, poetry; **poēsis**, poem, poetry;
adj. **poēticus**
ecloga, short poem, eclogue
versus, line
poēma compōnere, carmen condere, write a p.
modus, rhythm, harmony
numerus, rhythm, cadence
poēta, poet; **poētria**, poetess; **fidicen** (*poet.*),
(lyric) poet
carmen or poēma compōnere or pangere,
write verse
ex tempore, on the spur of the moment
afflātus (dīvīnus), permōtiō mentis dīvīna,
inspiration
furor, frenzy

42.3

lingua, language; *Gallicae linguae scientiam habere*, know the language of Gaul
sermō, language; *in Latīnō sermōne*, in Latin
trāferre or trānsferre, translate; *verba trālāta*, translated expressions; **trā- or trānslātiō**, translation
interpres, interpreter, translator; **interpretārī**, translate; *noun* **interpretātiō**

43.1 true

vērus, true; *vēra dicit*, he is speaking the truth; *vēra et falsa*, truth and falsehood;
vēritās, truth, truthfulness; *manere in vēritāte*, adhere to the truth; **vēridicus**, truthful
vērē, truly, in fact
rēvērā, really
vēritātis studiōsus, strictly truthful
vērāx, veracious
locuplēs, worthy of credence, trustworthy
rēctus, right, correct, proper, accurate
rīte, fitly, rightly
solidus, sincērus, genuine, sound, real
fāma, rumor, audītiō, report, rumour, hearsay; *levis audītiō*, unfounded report; *rumōrem spargere or dissipāre*, spread a report

in sermōnem hominum venīre, get talked about
rūmusculī P, idle talk, gossip
ferunt or fertur, men say, it is reported, there is a story

43.2 false

falsus, false, untrue, unreal, groundless; *adv.* **falsō**
fictus, mentītus (*poet.*), **fūcātus, fūcōsus**, spurious, false, fictitious, counterfeit; **fictum**, fiction, deception
mentīrī, lie, deceive; **mendāx**, untruthful, *as noun* liar; **mendācium**, lie, falsehood; *dīcere m.*, tell a lie
ēmentīrī, feign, allege falsely, fabricate
ā vēritāte dēflectere, depart from the truth
commentus, commentīcius, invented, fictitious; **commentum**, fiction, lie
calumnia, false statement, misrepresentation; **calumniārī**, misrepresent, blame unjustly
dētorquēre, misrepresent
in errōrem indūcere, mislead
dēcipere, deceive
fūcus, pretence
suprālātiō, trāiectiō, exaggeration

q.v. error, 40.42

q.v. fraud, 47.4

43.3 proof

experīrī, perīclitārī, make trial of, put to the test; **experīmentum**, proof; **perīculum**, trial, proof; *Gpn fidei p. facere*, test one's good faith
indiciūm, token, proof
argūmentum, proof, evidence; *a. petere*, seek; *afferre or prōmere*, adduce, bring forward; *sūmere*, get; *cōnfirmāre*, corroborate; **argūmentārī**, prove, adduce as proof
testimōnium, evidence
probāre, approbāre, prove, demonstrate; *noun* **approbātiō**
convincere (e.g. *errōres Gpn*), demonstrate
ēvidēns, manifest, obvious

44 EMOTIONS

44.0

flagrāre, inflammārī, ārdere, glow, be stirred, e.g. *dēsideriō, amōre, odiō*
exagitāre, excitāre, incendere, perciere, permovēre, rouse, stimulate, stir up, excite; *nouns incendium*, e.g. *invidiae*; **permōtiō**, excitement, emotion
(animum) movēre, commovēre, touch (the heart), make an impression; **afficere** (*dolōre*, etc.), affect; **affectus**, mood, state of mind
commōtus, excited, aroused; **commōtiō**, excitement
animum exsuscitāre, excite
afferre (*dolōrem, spem*, etc.), cause
elātiō, transport
fervor animī, ārdor, ardour, passion; **fervens, fervidus**, inflamed, passionate
flamma, passion, e.g. *amōris, invidiae*
movērī, be touched, e.g. *lacrimīs*; **mōtus**, emotion, passion
stimulus, torment, incitement; **stimulāre**, goad, spur on, incite
cruciāre, discrucīāre, excrucīāre, exedere, torquēre, torment, torture; **cruciātus, tormentum**, torture, anguish
tābescere (e.g. *dēsideriō, dolōre*), be consumed
pellere, affect, impress
percutere, perturbāre, affect deeply, make an impression on; *noun perturbātiō*
incumbere (e.g. *in aliquod studium, in cupiditātem*), incline to, devote oneself to
prōnus, prōpēsus ad Actg, inclined to
prōpendere ad Actg, be inclined to

endure, suffer

ferre, perferre, sufferre, endure, bear
patī, bear, endure; *aequō animō p.*, bear calmly, with equanimity or resignation;
patientia, patience
perpetī, endure, bear steadfastly; **perpepsiō**, endurance
sustinere (e.g. *vim hostium*), endure, withstand
tolerāre, bear, endure, put up with
intolerābilis, intolerandus, unbearable

allay, assuage, relieve, soothe

lēnīre, mitīgāre, mitigate, assuage, soothe, appease

cohibere, repress, hold in check
subvenire *with D*, relieve, remedy
exaurire *Dpn dolōrem*, relieve one of sorrow
eximere *Dpn cūrās*, rid one of cares
temperāre, moderate, soothe
mulcere, permulcere, soothe
erigere, cheer up
cōnsolārī, levāre, relevāre, sublevāre, sōlārī (*plp.*), comfort, relieve; **cōnsolātiō**, consolation; **sōlācium**, what brings consolation; *hōc māgnō est sōlāciō*, is a great consolation; *hōc sōlāciō ūtor*, this comforts me
dolōris fōmentum, alleviation of pain, sorrow
levāmen, levāmentum, comfort, alleviation
residere, abate, subside (e.g. *tumor animī resēdit*)

44.1 joy, satisfaction

gaudium, (inward) joy; *P*, signs of joy;
gaudere, rejoice; *in sinū g.*, keep one's joy to oneself
triumphāre, rejoice
dēlectāre, oblectāre, delight, give pleasure; *noun dēlectātiō, oblectāmentum, oblectātiō*
dēliciae, cause of delight
iuvat (*perf. iūvit*) **mē, cordī est mihi**, it pleases me
frui *Abtg*, enjoy; **perfrui**, enjoy thoroughly
libenter, gladly
gestire, rejoice, exult
laetus, glad, joyous; *noun laetitia*, (manifested) joy; *laetitiā efferrī*, be transported with j.; *laetitiam dare Dpn*, gladden; *percipere laetitiam ex Abtg*, get j. from; **laetārī** *Ab or dē Ab*, rejoice in
exultāre, rejoice, exult; *noun exultātiō*
in caelō esse, be very happy
festivus, lively, gay, joyous, merry
alacer, glad; *noun alacritās*
hilaris, cheerful, merry; *noun hilaritās; verbs hilarāre, exhilarāre*
lascivus, frolicsome; **lascivia**, playfulness
bonō animō esse, be of good cheer
voluptās, pleasure; *voluptātem percipere*, feel p.; *voluptātibus frui, voluptātēs haurire*, enjoy, indulge in p.; *tōtum sē voluptātibus trādere*, give oneself entirely to p.; **homō voluptārius**, voluptuary
grātus, pleasing, agreeable
placere, please; *hōc mihi placet*, I like this
beātus, fēlix, happy; *vīta beāta*, happiness; *nouns beātitās, beātitūdō, fēlicitās*

satisfacere, satisfy; *noun* **satisfactiō**
probāre, be satisfied with, approve; *sē Dpn p.*, make oneself acceptable to
illud satis habeō dīcere, am satisfied to say this
contentus, content; *suā sorte c.*, satisfied with his lot
tranquillus, unruffled; *noun* **tranquillitās**
placidus, **placātus**, **sēdātus**, calm, peaceful;
sēdāre, allay, calm
sēcūrus, free from care, untroubled; *noun* **sēcūritās**
lēnis, gentle, calm; *noun* **lēnitās**
mītis, calm, placid
īram pōnere or **īrae moderārī**, cease to be angry

44.2 sorrow, anger

sērius, grave, serious
dolor, sorrow, distress, ache, suffering; *stimulī dolōris, pangs; dolōre permōtus*, moved by grief; *hīc mē d. tangit*, this grieves me; *dolōrem haurīre*, suffer pain; *dolōrem cōnsōlandō levāre*, soothe the sorrowing; *dolōrī indulgēre*, give way to distress; *dolōribus premī, angī, frangī*, be crushed by grief; *dolōre privāre*, free from sorrow; **dolēre**, be sad
lūctus, affliction, mourning; *lūctum haurīre*, be afflicted; **lūctuōsus**, mournful, pitiable;
lūctificus, causing sorrow; **lūgēre**, mourn
aerumna, trouble, affliction
aeger animī, distress; *noun* **aegritūdō**, grief, sorrow
multa mē angunt, I am much distressed; *noun* **angor**; *adj.* **ānxius**, whence **ānxiētās**, **ānxitūdō**
vexāre, distress, worry; *nouns* **vexātiō**, **vexātor**
stimulāre, vex, disturb; **stimulus**, torment, pang
trīstis, sad; *noun* **trīstītia**
maestus, sad; *nouns* **maeror**, **maestītia**; *in maerōre iacēre*, be in deep sorrow; *in mediō maerōre*, in the depths of sorrow; *verb* **maerēre**
animum contrahere or **dēmittere**, lose heart
afflictus, dejected, desponding
(animus) abiectus, **dēmissus**, **oppressus**, dejected, depressed; *noun* **abiectiō**

īnfrāctiō, **contractiō** or **dēmissiō animī**, depression
flēre, weep, bewail; *noun* **flētus**; *adj.* **flēbilis**, lamentable, tearful
lacrimāre, **lacrimās profundere** or **effundere**, weep
collacrimāre, **illacrimāre**, weep at or over, lament
plōrāre, **complōrāre**, **dēplōrāre**, **lāmentārī**, **dēflēre**, wail, lament, regret, deplore; *nouns* **plōrātus**, **lāmenta (P)**, **lāmentātiō**; *adj.* **lāmentābilis**, lamenting, full of sorrow
gemere, wail
plangor, wailing, lamentation
querī, **conquerī**, bewail, complain of; **querēla**, **querimōnia**, **questiō**, **questus**, **conquestiō**, lament, complaint
dēsiderāre, miss; *noun* **dēsiderium**, grief (at loss)
singultus, sobbing; *verb* **singultāre**
īngrātus, unpleasant, disagreeable, distasteful
displicēre, displease
miser, wretched; **miseria**, unhappiness; *miseriārum incendia*, a sea of evils
īnfēlix, unhappy

īra, anger; *īrae indulgēre*, give way to anger; *illud mē irā affēcīt*, it made me angry
īrācundia, hasty temper, rage; *īrācundiam cohibēre*, restrain temper
īrāscī, grow angry; **īrātus**, **īrā incēnsus** or **commōtus**, **īrācundus**, angry, irritable;
īrācundia, hastiness of temper, wrath, passion; *īrācundiā permōtus*, moved by anger; *ad irācundiam addūcere*, *īrā afficere* *Acpn*, make angry
suscēnsēre, be angry, cherish anger, be inflamed with wrath
graviter (aegrē, molestē) ferre, resent, be annoyed
offēnsiōnem afferre, be vexatious, annoying
īrrītāre, **laccessere**, **prōvocāre**, make angry, exasperate, harass; *noun* **īrrītātiō**
Acpn **sermōnibus prōvocāre**, exasperate
Dpn **stomachum facere** or **movēre**, annoy, irritate; **stomachārī**, be angry or peevish;
stomachōsus, peevish, irritable
bīlem commovet, it rouses anger
molestus, troublesome, annoying; **molestia**, annoyance, vexation, disgust; *sine molestiā tuā*, without trouble to yourself
dolor, resentment, indignation

indignārī, be angry, displeased, indignant;
noun indignātiō

44.3 love, admiration, wonder, pity, kindness

amor, love; *amōrī amōre respondēre*, return love; **amāre**, love; **ādamāre**, grow fond of, love deeply; *adjs. amāns, amābilis*

pius, affectionate, loyal; *noun pietās*

meī studiōsus, devoted to me

fovēre, cherish

indulgēre *Dpn*, be kind, indulgent to; *noun indulgentia*

diligere, esteem, regard

cārus, beloved, dear; **cāritās**, regard, affection

grātia, regard, friendship; *apud Acpn grātiam inire*, win one's favour; *grātiās acquirere*, win favour; **amōrem sibi conciliāre**, win affection

voluntās ergā *Acpn*, affection, regard for

grātulārī, congratulate; *noun grātulātiō*

verērī, **reverērī**, revere, esteem

observāre, respect, esteem; *noun observantia*

Acpn plūris facere, habēre, dūcere, aestimāre or putāre, esteem more highly

plūrimum *Dpn tribuere*, think very highly of

tē honōre or in honōre habeō, tē honōre afficiō or augeō, tē in honōrem addūcō, honour you, do you honour

honōre apud *Acpn esse*, be honoured by

honōrātus, honoured, honourable

honestāre, honour

mīrārī, admīrārī, admire, wonder at; *nouns admīrātiō, admiration, wonder;*

admīrātiōnem mihi movēs, I wonder, am surprised at you; **mīrāculum**, marvel, wonder; *esse mīrāculō*, excite wonder

mīrus, mīrābilis, mīrificus, admīrābilis, wonderful, astonishing, marvellous; *mīrum in modum*, wonderfully

obstupēscere, be amazed; **stupor**, stupefaction, amazement; **stupefacere**, numb, stun

ostentum, prodigy, portent

suspīcere (e.g. *ēloquentiam Gpn*), admire

miseror, miseror, mē miseret, I pity; *noun miserātiō*; **misericors**, tender-hearted, pitiful; *noun misericordia*; *misericiordiā*

frangī, be moved by pity; **miserābilis**, pitiable

beneficium offerre *Dpn*, **benevolentia** *Acpn augēre*, show kindness to

inservire, servire *Dpn*, be at one's service, attached to

dēvincire (e.g. *benevolentia*), **obstringere** (e.g. *donis*) *Acpn*, oblige, lay under an obligation

Acpn sibi obligāre (e.g. *liberālitāte*), bind someone to oneself

44.4 hatred, contempt, scorn

odium, hatred, aversion, dislike, grudge; *odiō esse* *Dpn*, be hated by; *verb odi*; *adj. odiōsus*, offensive, hateful

invidia, malice, hatred; *invidiam habeo*, am hated; *invidia flagrō apud vōs*, am an object of unpopularity with you, am detested; **invidēre**, take a dislike to; **invīsus**, hated; **invidiōsus**, unpopular, disliked

malevolus, ill-disposed, spiteful; *noun malevolentia*

malitia, ill-will, spite (underhand)

respuere, reject, dislike

offensus est mihi, he is offensive to me, I object to him

āspērārī, spurn (aversion)

contemptiō, late contemptus, contempt; *in contemptiōnem venire*, be despised; *contemptuī esse or habēre*, despise

contemnere, disdain (as causing no fear); **dēspicere**, disdain (as having no value);

haud contemnendus, far from contemptible; *noun dēspicientia*

dēspicātus, contemptible; *nouns dēspicātiō, dēspicātus*, contempt

spernere, indignārī, repudiāre, rēicere, scorn, disdain

mē piget, I dislike, loathe

irridēre, ēlūdere, illūdere, cavillārī, ridicule, mock, make fun of; *nouns irrīsīō, irrīsus, illūsīō, cavillātiō*, mockery; **irrīsor, cavillātor**, mocker

dērīdēre, deride

lūdere *Acpn*, banter; **lūdbrium**, butt, laughing-stock

44.5 wish, desire

velle, wish, care to; **pervelle**, desire greatly; **voluntās**, will, wish, desire

optāre, cupīre, wish, desire; *nouns cupīdō, cupiditās*, both used in good and bad sense;

cupidāte incēnsus, aflame with passion;
cupiditātēs coercēre, subdue one's
passions

optātum, wish

concupiscere *Actg ad insāniam*, be madly
desirous of

cupidus, eager, passionate

exoptāre, dēsiderāre, gestire, wish earnestly,
long for; *nouns dēsiderium, dēsiderātiō*;

dēsideriō incēnsus, burning with desire

libīdō, desire, longing, caprice, wilfulness,
passion, lust; *libidine ferrī*, be carried
away by passion; *adj. libīdinōsus*

licentia, licentiousness

appetēns, craving for; *noun appetitiō*

impetus, eager desire, e.g. *dīcendī*

avidus, longing eagerly for, desirous; *noun*
aviditās

utinam!, if only!

peroptātō, greatly to one's wish

44.6 be unwilling, prefer, shrink from, envy, curse

nōlle, recūsāre, be unwilling, reluctant; *noun*
recūsātiō

mē invītō, against my will

ingrātūs, against one's will

mālle, prefer

Acpn Dpn praepōnere, antepōnere,
**praeferre, anteferre, praevertere,
antevertere, praepoptāre, prefer**

potius, rather; **potissimum**, in preference to all
fugere, subterfugere, vītāre, avoid, shun;
noun vītātiō

abhorrēre, shrink from, detest

offendere, revolt

fastīdīre, shrink from, loathe; **fastīdium** (*or*
satietātem) **parere**, disgust; *adj.*
fastīdiōsus, fastidious

taedet, it disgusts; *noun taedium*; *afferre t.*
Dpn, disgust; *t. patī*, be disgusted

invidēre, envy; *invidiam subīre*, incur envy;
nouns invidia, envy; **invidentia**, envying;
adjs. invidus, invidiōsus, envious

malīgnus, lividus, envious

dētestārī (e.g. *omnibus precibus*) *Acpn*,
curse, execrate

exsecrārī, male or mala precārī, curse; *noun*
exsecrātiō; *adj. exsecrābilis*

precēs *P*, curse

sacer, accursed

44.7 hope, confidence

spēs, expectation, hope, prospect(s); *verb*
spērāre; *bene, rēctē s.*, look forward to

fidēs, fidūcia, cōnfidentia, confidence

fidere, cōnfidere, trust

fidem tibi habeō, place reliance on you

q.v. bold, timid, see 38.4

44.8

verērī, reverērī, stand in awe of, fear; *noun*
reverentia, awe

timor, fear; *hōc timōre*, through fear of this;
timōre afficere, frighten; *timor incēdit*
animō, I am frightened; *timōre oppressus*,
weighed down with anxiety; *sē ex māgnō*
timōre recreāre, recover from a great
fright; *adj. timidus*, frightened, faint-
hearted; *verbs timēre, pertimēscere*, take
alarm, be afraid of; **extimēscere**, fear greatly

metus, dread; *abiectus metū*, desperate; in
metum tē addūcō, inspire you with fear;
metū frangī, be overcome by fear; *verb*
metuere; **metuendus**, formidable

metum *Dpn levāre*, relieve from fear; *ā metū*
respirāre, recover from fear

pavēre, be terrified, in a panic; *noun pavor*,
dread, alarm, panic; *pavōre percussus*,
dismayed; *adj. pavidus*, terrified

exhorrēscere, inhorrēscere, shudder, be
horrified

formīdō, fear; *verb formīdāre*; *adj.*
formīdolōsus, terrible; timid (*rare*)

reformīdāre, shrink back from, dread; *noun*
reformīdātiō

terror, terror; *terrōrēs*, bugbears; *terrōrem*
inicere, offerre, strike terror in;
incidit t. exercituī, panic seized the
army; *terrōrem inferre* *Dpn*, terrify; *adj.*
perterritus, dismayed, panic-stricken

terrēre, conterrēre, exterrēre, proterrēre,
terrītāre, terrify

absterrēre, frighten away, deter

terribilis, tremendus, dreadful, terrible

(*terrōrem, formīdinem, etc.*) **incutere**,
inspire, excite fear, fill with panic, etc.

excire, frighten, e.g. *ex somnō*

trepidus, alarmed, agitated; *verb trepidāre*;
noun trepidātiō

obstupefactus, aghast

tremere, contremiscere, tremble; *noun* **tremor**

horrere, tremble at, be afraid of; **horrere**, tremble, shudder; **perhorrere**, have a great horror of, be horrified at; *noun* **horror**; *adj.* **horribilis**, frightful

atrōx, horrible; *noun* **atrōcitas**

dēspērāre, despair, give up hope; *dē summā rērum dēspērāre*, despair wholly; *salūte dēspērātā, rēbus dēspērātis*, in despair; *noun* **dēspērātiō**; *ad dēspērātiōnem pervenire*, become desperate

animum contrahere or **dēmittere**, lose heart; *nouns* **contractiō** or **dēmissiō animi**

percellere, discourage, daunt

sollicitūdō, anxiety; *animum sollicitūdine exonerāre*, relieve from anxiety; **sollicitus**, anxious, agitated; **sollicitare**, cause fear, harass

suspendere, keep in suspense; *adj.* **suspēsus**, anxious, in suspense

suspiciārī, suspect; *noun* **suspiciō**; *in suspiciōnem (e.g. avāritiae) venire, cadere*, be suspected of; *adj.* **suspiciōsus**, feeling or raising suspicion

45 LAW

45.1

iūs, law, justice; *iūs civile*, common law; *iūs gentium*, law of nature; *iūs fāsque*, law of God and man

iūre, rightfully

iūstitia, justice

iūstus, just, lawful

aequus, fair, impartial

iniūstus, inīquus, unjust, unfair

senātūscōsultum, decree of senate

lēs, law, enactment of Comitia Centuriāta; *quī lēgēs condit*, law-giver

lēgitimus, lawful, legal

privilēgium, law in favour of, or directed against, an individual

rogātiō, bill; *verb* **rogāre**, propose; *rogātiōnem prōmulgāre*, publish; *r. accipere* or *iubere*, ratify, accept (a bill); *r. antiquāre*, reject; *r. suādere*, support; *rogātiōnī intercedere*, oppose b.

abrogāre, rescindere lēgem, repeal law; *noun* **abrogātiō**

ex lēge aliquid dērogāre, repeal law in part; *noun* **dērogātiō**

obrogāre lēgī, (partly) repeal a law (by a new one); *noun* **obrogātiō**

plēbiscitum, decision of Comitia Tribūta, ordinance; **sciscere**, decree, ordain, enact (of the people)

ēdictum, edict of magistrate; **ēdicere**, decree, ordain, give official notice

45.2 judge, jury

praetor, presiding judge

iūdex, judge, juror; *i. iūstus*, just j.; *i. cupidus*, partial, unjust j.; *citāre iūdicem*, summon j.

arbiter, arbitrator, judge; *a. honōrārius*, arbitrator chosen by parties, not by judge; **arbitrium**, decision of arbitrator

iūs reddere, dispense, administer justice

iūdicāre, judge; *i. sine cupiditate*, j. impartially; *rē nōndum iūdicātā*, pending the decision of the judge

inflectere iūs grātiā, pervert justice

tribūnal, judgement-seat

subsellium, bench of judge, court

iūdicium, trial

iūdicium or **iūdicēs dare**, grant a trial (*of praetor who proposed judges*)

iūstitium, suspension of legal business

45.3 plaintiff, defendant

āctor, is quī petit, plaintiff; **petitor**, in private cases; **accūsātor**, espec. in state offence, also generally

sacrāmentum, civil suit

causam agere, plead a case; **causam orāre, dīcere**, plead one's cause, address the court

arcessere, sistere, citāre, in iūs or ad iūdicium vocāre, or in iūdicium addūcere or dēdūcere, summon, arraign, prosecute

Acpn in iūdicium prōdūcere, bring before the court

Acpn lēge interrogāre, bring an action against **reus**, defendant, prisoner, culprit; *Acpn reum facere* or *agere*, put on trial

is unde or **ā quō petitur**, defendant

nōmen Gpn dēferre, indict, impeach, put on trial

crīmen, accusation; *in crīmen venire G*, in crīmine *G esse*, be charged with

dē pecūniis repetundis Acpn postulāre, bring a charge of extortion against

45.4 lawsuit

quaestiō, inquiry; *quaestiōnem dē Ab habēre or instituere*, hold an inquiry about; *quaestiōnī praeesse*, conduct a trial (of judge)

causa, lawsuit, legal process; *indictā causā*, without going to court; *c. integra*, not settled

lis, lawsuit; **litigāre**, dispute, sue at law; **litigiōsus**, contentious; in dispute

dica, lawsuit; *dicam scribere Dpn*, bring an action against

diem dicere, fix a day

vas, bail, surety; *vadēs poscere*, ask for b.; *vadem dare*, give s.; *vadem accipere*, accept s.; *sē dare vadem prō Ab*, go bail for; *vadem dēserere*, forfeit one's b.

vadimōnium, bail, security; *v. sistere or ad v. venire*, present oneself in court

vadārī, bind over by bail (to appear in court)

fidūciam committere Dpn, give a pledge

praes, surety (in money matters)

spondere, become security; **spōnsus**, security, bail; **spōnsiō**, promise, guarantee; **spōnsor**, surety

prō Abpn intercēdere, go surety for

cautiō, bond, bail

pignus, pledge, security; *verb pignerāre*, give as a pledge

accūsāre, accuse, indict; *fūrti eum accūsāt*, he charges him with theft

arguere (Acpn sceleris, crimine, dē crimine), accuse

dēlātor, accuser, informer

index, informer

cōnsultus, lawyer

patrōnus, advocate

rabula, raucous advocate

advocāre, call in (as consultant); **advocātus**, legal assistant; *later*, advocate, attorney;

advocātiō, legal assistance, counsel, the bar

causam dēfendere, make a defence (of oneself or another)

arbiter, auctor, testis, witness; *testēs exhibere*, produce; *Mārcum testem prōducere or prōferre*, put M. in the witness box; *t. mercēnnārius*, bribed w.; *falsum testem subōrnāre*, suborn a false witness; *verbs testārī*, call upon as witness, bear witness; **antestārī**, call as witness

testimōnium, evidence; *t. dicere*, give e.

testificārī, testify; *noun testificātiō*

indiciūm, deposition, proof, evidence

45.5 voting, decision

tabella, tablet (*with A=absolvō, C=condemnō, NL=nōn liquet*)

urna, voting urn

sententia, decision, verdict

iūdicium, decision of court

iūs dicere, prōnūntiāre, pronounce judgment

causam obtinere, win; *c. perdere*, lose

prōvocāre ad Ac, make an appeal (to a higher court); *noun prōvocātiō*

liberātiō, acquittal

q.v. guilt, punishment, 47

iūrāre, swear; **iūsiūrandum**, oath; *i. iūrāre*, swear; *i. accipere*, be sworn; *i. cōservāre*, keep oath; *i. violāre*, break oath; *iūreiūrandō stāre*, abide by oath; *iūreiūrandō astringere or obstringere*, bind by an oath, *with sē=vow*, swear; *iūreiūrandō dēvinctus*, bound by an oath; *ad i. Acpn adigere*, put on oath

adiūrāre, confirm on oath

abiūrāre, deny on oath

perīurium, laesa fidēs, nūllum iūsiūrandum, false oath, perjury; **pēierāre or falsum iūrāre**, perjure oneself

litem redimere, come to terms (of opposing parties)

46 DANGER, PROTECTION, HELP

46.1 danger

perīculum, danger

discrīmen, critical situation, crisis, turning-point; risk, danger; *rem in extrēmum d. addūcere or dēdūcere*, risk all; *rēs est in summō discrīmine*, the situation is desperate

rēs est in angustō, the situation is critical

in extrēmīs suīs rēbus, in the greatest danger

perīculōsus, late anceps, dangerous

perīclitārī, risk, e.g. *salūtem rēipublicae*; *also* be in danger

omnia profundere, stake all

via lūbrica, dangerous path

46.2 safety

cavēre, beware; *cavē canem; tibi caveō*, am careful for your safety
praecavēre, guard against
ēvītāre, dēvītāre, avoid; *noun dēvītātiō*
effugere, ēvādere, escape; **effugium**, means of escape
perfugium, receptāculum, receptus, respectus, refugium, shelter, refuge; *habēre receptum ad Acpn*, be able to take shelter with
cōnfugere or refugere ad Acpn, flee for refuge to, take refuge with
ad meam fidem cōfugiunt, they flee to me for protection
salūs, safety; *tibi salūtem afferō*, save you; *salūtī meae diffido*, fear for my safety; *salūtem fugā petere*, effect one's escape
tūtus (e.g. *ab hostibus*), **salvus**, safe; *tē salvum volō*, wish for your safety
incolumis, intāctus, integer, safe and sound, uninjured
integellus, fairly intact
inviolātus, unharmed, inviolate
in portū esse, be in safety
tūtō, safely
nūllō meō perīculō, without danger to me

46.3 help

auxilium, help; *petere a.*, seek h.; *a. tibi ferō, auxiliō tibi sum*, help you; *auxiliō venīre*, come to assistance; *verb auxiliārī*
appellō tē, appeal to you for help
iuvāre, adiuvāre, fulcīre Acpn, subvenīre Dpn, help
adiūtor, administer, helper, assistant
manūs Dpn or ad Acpn tendere, implore help
praestō esse, attend upon, serve, aid
Dpn adesse, help (*spec. as advocātus*)
opem petere ab Abpn, seek help; **opem ferre Dpn**, bring assistance
opitulārī Dpn, help
succurrere, hasten to help
subsidiō venīre or proficīsci, go to aid
subsidiū submittere, subsidiō mittere, send to the aid
sublevāre, support, sustain
(animum) cōfirmāre, sustain, encourage; *noun cōfirmātiō*
operā tuā, by your aid

46.4 protection, defence

tuērī, tūtārī, cūstōdīre, praesidēre D, guard
cūstōs, guardian, protector
vindex, protector, deliverer; **vindicāre**, defend, protect, deliver
tuitiō, praesidium, tūtēla, protection
prōpūgnāculum, bulwark, defence
cūstōdia, watch
tegere, obtegere, prōtegere, protect
fidem Gpn sequī or in fidē Gpn esse, be under the protection of
Acpn in fidem recipere, afford protection to
arcēre, prohibēre, keep off
sē mūnīre contrā Actg, secure oneself against
servāre, cōservāre, preserve, save; **cōservātor, servātor**, saviour; **cōservātiō**, preservation
dēfendere, defend; *nouns dēfensiō*, defence; **dēfēnsor**, defender
ā morte ēripere, save one's life

46.5 hindrance

obstruere, obesse Dpn, interpellāre, prohibēre Ab or ab Ab, impede, obstruct, hinder
adversārī, oppose; *adj. and noun adversārius*
impedīre, praepedīre, obstāre, obsistere, officere, praevertēre, thwart, hinder, oppose, stand in someone's way; *noun impedīmentum*
interclūdere (e.g. *viam Dpn*), cut off, bar
deterreere, deter, discourage, prevent, hinder

46.6

ūtī, use
ūtilis, helpful, useful; *noun ūtilitās*
prōdesse, be of use or advantage, benefit, profit
salūtāris, salūber or salūbris, serviceable, beneficial

inūtilis, useless
inānis, useless, unprofitable; *noun inānitās*
futtilis, vain, worthless; *noun futtilitās*
frustrā, nēquīquam, in vain

47 GUILT, PUNISHMENT

47.1 crime, wrongdoing

facinus, misdeed, outrage, crime; f. *committere or facere*, commit a crime
scelus, crime, wickedness, sin; s. *excōgitāre*, concipere, plan a crime; s. *suscipere*, *facere*, *committere or ēdere*, commit a crime; *ad scelus impellere*, urge to crime
commissum, crime
capital, **rēs capitālis**, capital crime
nefās, wickedness; n. *est*, it is forbidden
nēquitia, worthlessness, vileness, wickedness
turpitudō, vileness
foeditās, shamefulness
flāgitium, shameful act, atrocity; f. *facere or committere*
impūritās, shamefulness
maleficium, **malefactum**, evil deed
culpa, fault, crime, blame; *in culpā esse*, be guilty, culpable; *extrā culpam*, free from blame
noxā, **dēlictum**, transgression, injury, wrong, offence, crime
noxia, guilt
obnoxius, guilty, liable to punishment
peccātum, sin
nocēre, **laedere**, injure
iniūria, wrong, injury; *iniūriam facere*, *impōnere*, *inferre D*, wrong; *iniūriam persequi*, *ulcisci*, punish, avenge
damnum, injury, harm, damage
patī, suffer

47.2 criminal, wicked

malus, evil
facinorōsus, criminal, vicious
improbus, **impudēns**, **impudīcus**, wicked, shameless; *nouns* **improbitās**, **impudentia**, **impudīcitia**
scelestus, **scelerātus**, **cōnscelerātus**, wicked, villainous; **maleficus**, wicked, criminal; **malīgnus**, wicked, spiteful; **nocēns**, wicked, culpable
perditus, **impius**, abandoned, wicked; *noun* **impietās**
noxius, guilty; criminal
nefārius, abominable, execrable, monstrous; **obscēnus**, shameless, revolting, immoral; **probrōsus**, shameful, vicious; **prōflīgātus**, vile, dissolute

nēquam, worthless
taeter, repulsive, abominable
turpis, disgraceful; *sē turpiter gerere*, behave disgracefully
foedus, dishonourable, shameful
flāgitīōsus, infamous, dissolute
impūrus, shameful, infamous
barbarus, savage
nocēns, **reus**, **sōns**, malefactor, criminal
luēs, **pestēs hominum**, (social) pests
scelus, **verberō**, **furcifer**, scoundrel

Dpn **pecūniam adimere**, rob
fūr, thief; *verb* **fūrārī**
fūrtum, theft
clepere, steal secretly
latrō, robber, pirate, brigand; **latrōcinium**, robbery, piracy, brigandage; *verb* **latrōcinārī**
praedō, robber; **praedārī**, plunder, rob
ēreptor, robber
grassātor, **latrunculus**, footpad
rapīna, act of robbery; *P* pillage
raptum, **praeda**, plunder, booty
dēspoliāre, **dēpeculārī**, rob, plunder; *noun* **dēpeculātor**
repetundae, extortion
interceptor, embezzler
pīrāta, pirate; *adj.* **pīrāticus**

Dpn **vītam adimere or auferre**, *Acpn* **vītā prīvāre or expellere**, kill
sīcārius, **homicīda**, **interfactor**, **percussor**, assassin, murderer
mors illāta per scelus, assassination
parricīda, murderer of father or other relation; **parricīdium**, murder of a relation; **frātricīda**, murder of brother
lētum, violent death
strangulāre, strangle
venēnum, **vīrus**, poison; v. *Dpn* **dare**, *parāre*, *praebēre or infundere*, administer p.; *Acpn* **venēnō tollere or venēnāre**, poison
necāre, (e.g. *fame*, *venēnō*), kill (starve to death, poison)
caedēs, **nex**, **occīdiō**, **occīsiō**, murder; *Dpn* **necem inferre or offerre**, murder; **caedere**, **ēnecāre**, **exanimāre**, **necāre**, **interficere**, **interimere**, **occīdere**, slay, kill;

occidiōne occidere, massacre,
exterminate
effligere, strike dead, kill
sanguinem haurire, shed blood
iugulare, cut the throat, kill
obtruncare, trucidare, butcher, cut to pieces

47.3 arrest, innocence, acquit, pardon

suspiciari, suspect
queri, complain
dēprendere, catch, find out; *noun*
dēprehēnsiō
comprehendere in furtō, catch in the act of
stealing
convincere, convict (of crime or error)
praemandata P, warrant for arrest
prehendere, comprehendere Acpn, arrest
innocens, insōns, innocent, guiltless; *noun*
innocentia
sibi nullius culpaē cōsciūs, conscious of no
guilt
liber ā delictis, free from crime
castus, pure, innocent; *noun* **castitās**
carere reprehēnsiōne, be blameless
sāctimōnia, innocence
nullā meā culpā, through no fault of mine
praetendere, put forward as an excuse
absolvere, scelere solvere, acquit;
absolvitur furti
excūsare, excuse; *noun* **excūsatiō**
pūrgare, justify, excuse; *noun* **pūrgatiō**
venia, pardon
multam, poenam remittere, remit
ignoscere, forgive
condonare, pardon, refrain from punishing (a
crime)
satisfactiōnem accipere, accept an apology

47.4 fraud, deception

fraus, fraud; **fraudare, defraudare**, cheat,
defraud, purloin, embezzle; *noun* **fraudatiō,**
fraudator; *adj.* **fraudulentus**
dolus, craft, deceit; *dolus malus*, fraud; *adj.*
dolōsus
māchina, trick, device; *verb* **māchinari**;
nouns **māchinatiō, māchinator**
Acpn **stratēgēmate percutere**, defraud by a
trick
dissimulare, dissemble, hide one's feelings
latebra, pretence, subterfuge
interpolare, falsify
dēcipere, circumvenire, eludere, frūstrari,
Dpn **impōnere, verba dare**, deceive, cheat

dēstituere, deceive, mislead; *noun* **dēstitutiō,**
deception
circumscribere, cheat, ensnare
ingere, simulare, feign, pretend; *noun* **fictiō,**
counterfeiting; **simulatiō**, deceit; **simulator**,
pretender, hypocrite
in speciem, as a pretence; *praebere speciem*
pūgnantium, pretend to be fighting
subterfugere (e.g. *militiam*), escape (by
trickery)
fallere, lead astray; *adj.* **fallax**, deceitful; *noun*
fallacia, stratagem, intrigue
illicere, pellicere, allure, lead astray, decoy
prōdere, betray; **prōditor**, traitor; **prōditiō,**
treachery
perfidus, infidus, treacherous, false

47.5 confession, remorse, atonement

fatēri, cōfiteri, agnoscere, confess, own
paenitet eum, he regrets, feels remorse for
pudet eum, he feels ashamed, blushes for
pudor, shame
veniam petere or poscere quod, apologise for
expiare, luere, poenās dare, make amends,
atone for; *noun* **expiatiō**
piaculum, offering as atonement

47.6 conviction, punishment

coarguere, convict of guilt or crime
damnare, condemnare, condemn; *capitis*
eum *condemnat*, condemns him to death;
capitis damnatus est, *nouns* **damnatiō,**
condemnatiō
pūnire, castigare, punish; *nouns* **pūnitiō,**
castigatiō, castigator
poena, penalty; *poenam capere de Abpn*,
petere or expetere ab Abpn, *repetere*,
sūmere de Abpn, *statuere*, *poenā*
afficere or multare, exact or inflict a p.,
punish; *poenās pendere, dēpendere,*
solvere, persolvere, perferre,
sufferre, luere, suffer punishment;
poenās subire, submit to punishment,
undergo sentence
supplicium, punishment; *ultimum s.*,
extreme penalty, capital punishment; *ad s.*
trādere, hand over for p.; *s. sūmere de*
Abpn, *suppliciō afficere*, punish;
suppliciō affici, be put to death
carnifex, executioner
carnificina, torture
tortor, executioner, torturer
animadvertere vitia in Acpn, punish

ulciscī (*Acpn* **prō scelere**), avenge, punish;
ultor, avenger
inultus, unavenged, with impunity
vindex, avenger, punisher; *verb* **vindicāre**
impūne, **impūnītē**, without punishment, with
impunity; *noun* **impūnitās**; *adj.* **impūnītus**
multa, fine; *multam* *committere*, incur f.;
multam Dpn irrogāre, impose f.; *multam*
remittere, remit f.; *multā coercēre*,
punish with a fine; *verb* **multāre**; *nouns*
irrogātiō multae, **multātiō**
īgnōminia, **īnfāmia**, dishonour, disgrace;
īgnōminiam Dpn inūrere, *or* *īgnōminiā*
notāre Acpn, brand with dishonour
vincīre, bind, fetter
vinculum, bond, chain, fetter; in *vincula*
conicere, put in prison; *vinculīs*
cōstringere, fetter
compedēs, fetters, shackles
pedica, shackle, chain for feet
catēna, chain; *catēnās inicere Dpn*, put in
fetters
carcer, **cūstōdia**, prison; in *carcerem* (*or*
vincula) *conicere or dēmittere*,
imprison; *ē or dē carcere ēmittere*,
release from p.
arca, prison, cell
cūstōdire, keep under arrest
vāpulāre, be flogged
virga, **ferula**, rod; *virgīs caedere*, flog
verbera, flogging; *castigāre Acpn*
verberibus, punish by flogging; **verberāre**,
flog, chastise
flagellum, scourge, whip; *verb* **flagellāre**
secūris, axe; *secūrī percutere*, behead
crux, cross; *crucī affigere*, crucify; *verb*
cruciāre

q.v. exile, 30.4

q.v. law, 45

48-50 SUNDRY GROUPS

48.1 take, hold, get

capere, take
sūmere, take up
dēprōmere, take or fetch out
assūmere, adopt, take
capessere, **captāre**, catch at
arripere, **corripere**, pick up, snatch up
intercipere, intercept; *noun* **interceptiō**

rapere, **prehendere**, **apprehendere**,
comprehendere, seize, grasp; **rapāx**,
grasping, rapacious; *noun* **rapācitās**
occupāre, seize, occupy
arrogāre, claim as one's own
appetere, try to get
aspīrāre ad Ac, aspire to
affectāre, seek, pursue
assequī, **cōnsequī**, **dēvenīre in Ac or ad Ac**,
attain, reach
attingere, touch
nanciscī, reach, get
acquirere, **adipiscī**, **apiscī**, obtain, get; *noun*
adeptiō
tenēre, hold; **tenāx**, gripping
sustinēre, support, hold up

48.2 strike, shake, break

caedere, **ferīre**, **percutere**, **quaterē**, strike, hit
verbera P, flogging; **verberāre**, beat, scourge
vāpulāre, be beaten
mulcāre, beat, maul
tundere, thump, beat
plāga, blow; *plāgam infligere*, strike;
plāgam accipere, be struck; **plāgōsus**,
fond of flogging
ictus, blow (that wounds)
fūstis, **clāva**, cudgel, club
pulsāre (e.g. *ōstium*), beat, knock at
conculcāre, **prōculcāre**, crush under foot,
trample on
frangere, **rumpere**, break; **frāgmen**,
fragment, splinter; **fragilis**, fragile
cōnfringere, break in pieces
quaterē, shake
quassāre, **conquassāre**, shake violently,
shatter
collidere, dash together
concutere, shatter, shake
discutere, shatter

48.31 do

agere, do, act, negotiate; **actiō**, acting, action;
agitātiō, activity
facere, do, make; **factum**, **facinus**, deed,
action
facessere, accomplish
perficere, perfect, bring about
exsequī, perform, fulfil
suscipere, undertake
agitāre Actg, **versārī in Abtg**, be engaged in,
occupied with
rēs gestae, deeds, achievements

sē nōn tenēre, or sē tenēre nōn posse, or tenērī nōn posse, or sibi temperāre nōn posse, quīn subj., be unable to keep from doing

48.32 refrain, restrain

abstinēre *Ab*, **temperāre** *ab Ab*, abstain from
absistere *Ab*, **dēsistere** *Ab*, **supersedere** *Ab*,
desist from, cease
sē sustinēre, nē subj., refrain from doing
parcere *Dtg*, desist from, refrain from
dētrectāre, recūsāre, abnuere, shrink from,
decline or refuse to do
cessāre, hang back (from something one has
begun *or* has to do)
frēnum, restraint, check; *frēnōs* *adhibere*,
restrain; *verb* **īnfrēnāre, refrēnāre**; *adj.*
effrēnātus, unbridled
tenēre, inhibēre, īnfringere, sustinēre,
reprehendere, reprimere, restringere
(*with Ac*), **moderārī** (*with D*), restrain,
check; *noun* **inhibitō**
coercere, comprimere, restrain, repress, curb

q.v. unrestrained, 38.3

48.33 agent, messenger

Actg per Acpn **trānsigere**, transact through
someone
trānsāctor, agent, negotiator
īnterpres, agent
minister (e.g. *sceleris*), tool
allēgāre, send as agent or messenger
lēgāre, send as ambassador; **lēgātus**,
ambassador; **lēgātīō**, embassy
nūntius, messenger
servus ā pedibus, prodromus, messenger,
courier

48.34 manage

administrāre, manage, superintend; *noun*
administrātīō
prōcūrāre, manage; **prōcūrātīō**, management;
prōcūrātor, manager, administrator
praesidēre, manage, direct; **praeses**, director
dispensāre, manage
ordināre, regulate

48.4 example, model

exemplar, exemplum, example, model;
exemplum afferre, adduce e.; *exempla*
sūmere, select e.; *Actg* *exemplō pōnere*, set
as an e.
specimen, pattern, model
effigiēs, ideal

48.51 press, grind, crush

premere, press
comprimere, press together
supprimere, press down
tundere, contundere, crush, bruise
frangere, crush
conterere, grind, pound

48.52 suppress, overwhelm, overthrow

comprimere, opprimere, crush, suppress
obruere, overwhelm
sternere, prōsternere, prōflīgāre, labefacere,
labefactāre, overthrow

48.6 stretch

tendere, stretch, distend, extend
intendere, extend
extendere, stretch, spread out
distendere, stretch out, distend
praetendere, porrigere, stretch out, hold out,
extend
patēre, pertinēre, spread out, stretch (*intrans.*)

48.7 cut, scrape

secāre, cut; **sectiō**, cutting
succidere, cut off, through or down
incidere, cut into
culter, knife
rādere, scrape
scalpere, scratch, scrape

48.8 pierce

figere, cōnfigere, trānsfigere, cōnfodere,
perfodere, trānsfodere, pierce
percutere, pierce, strike through
perforāre, make a hole through, pierce
through
trānsverberāre, pierce, thrust through
trāicere, strike through, pierce

48.9 tight, loose

artus, tight, taut

astringere, draw together

laxus, loose, slack; *verb laxāre*

solvere, exsolvere, resolvere, loosen

49.1 custom, usual, unusual

mōs, custom; *perducere Actg in mōrem*, make customary; *mōrem tenēre, retinēre or servāre*, keep a c.

suēscere, become accustomed; *perf. suēvī*, am accustomed; **suētus**, accustomed, usual

assuēscere, grow or be accustomed; **assuētus**, accustomed, used to; **assuēfacere**, accustom

cōnsuēscere, accustom, accustom oneself; *cōnsuēvī*, am accustomed; **cōnsuētūdō**, custom, habit; *cōnsuētūdine or ex c. or prō c.*, habitually, from custom; *praeter cōnsuētūdinem*, against one's c.; *cōnsuētūdinem referre*, restore a c.; *in cōnsuētūdinem venīre*, become a habit

īnsuēscere, accustom, get accustomed

īnsuētus, accustomed *and* unaccustomed to; unusual

factitāre, be accustomed to do, do usually

ut fit, as usually happens

īnstitūtum, custom, tradition; *īnstitūtō suō*, in one's customary way

solēre, be accustomed, wont; **solitus**, wonted, usual; **solitum**, what is usual, custom

sollemnis, usual; **sollemne**, custom, practice

inveterāscere, become fixed, established; **inveterārī**, be firmly established

dēsuēscere, be or grow unaccustomed; *noun dēsuētūdō*

exolēscere, pass out of use

vulgāris, ordinary, common

ūsitātus, usual, customary

inūsitātus, unusual, extraordinary, rare

īnsolēns, unusual, unaccustomed to; *noun īnsolentia*, being unaccustomed; **īnsolitus**, unaccustomed, unusual

inaudītus, unusual, strange

rārus, rare, unusual

singulāris, remarkable, rare, extraordinary

novus, novel, singular

extrāordinārius, extraordinary

49.2 suitable, fit, proper, unsuitable

commodus, fit, suitable, convenient; *noun commoditās*

aptus, suitable, fit, proper, capable of

accomodātus, appositus, suitable, appropriate

congruēns, appropriate

capāx, capable of, fit for

cōnsentāneus, becoming, proper; *cōnsentāneum est with inf.*, it is fitting

habilis, suitable, convenient

idōneus, proper, fit, suitable

opportūnus, convenient, apt, favourable; *noun*

opportunitās, favourable situation, time or circumstance

convenit with inf., it is suitable

pār or fās est with inf., it is right, proper

mātūrē, opportunely

incommodus, unsuitable, inconvenient

ineptus, unfitting, unsuitable

importūnus, unsuitable

q.v. opportunity, occasion, 2.6

49.3 correspond, agree, inconsistent

congruere cum Abtg, correspond or agree with

quadrāre, fit into, square with

respondēre, correspond, e.g. *paria paribus respondent*

cohaerēre, be consistent

repūgnāre, be inconsistent with

pūgnantia loquī, contradict oneself

haec incōnantissimē dicuntur, these statements are very inconsistent

49.4 substitute

subdere, substitute; *fīlius subditus*, changeling

substituere prō Abpn or Abtg, substitute

suppōnere in locum G, substitute

vicārius, substituted; *as noun* substitute, deputy, proxy

50.1 await

exspectāre, look out for, await; *noun*

exspectātiō; *in expectātiōne esse*, be expected; *praeter expectātiōnem*,

unexpectedly; *expectātiōnem movēre*, commovēre *or* concitāre; *expectātiōnem omnium vincere*, surpass all expectations

opperīrī, wait, wait for
īnsperātus, inexpectātus, unexpected
praeter or contrā opīniōnem, ex īnsperātō,
dē trānsversō (e.g. *rogāre*), unexpectedly

50.2 necessary, inevitable

necesse est, it is necessary, inevitable;
necessitās, necessity, compulsion;
necessārius, necessary, inevitable;
necessāriō, necessarily
opus est, e.g. *mihi*, I must
nōn possum nōn inf., facere nōn possum
quīn subj., I must
fieri nōn potest quīn subj., it is inevitable that

50.3 inform

certiōrem facere Acpn Gtg or dē Abtg or Ac
and inf., indicāre Actg, inform of
impertīre, communicate, impart
significāre, intimate
afferre, referre, report, inform; *nihil novī*
ad nōs afferēbātur, we received no news

50.4 make known, publish

vulgāre, spread about, make known
dīvulgāre, publish, make widely known
pervulgāre, make generally known
prōmulgāre, publish; *noun* **prōmulgātiō**
in pūblicum prōpōnere, make known
ēmānāre (e.g. *in vulgus*), issue, be spread
ēnūntiāre, divulge
praecō, herald, crier; **praecōnium**, publication

50.5 power, strength

vīs, force, power; *summā vī*, with all one's
might
revīrēscere, regain strength
nervī P, vigour, strength; **nervōsus**, vigorous
pollēre, be strong; **pollēns**, mighty, powerful
vigēre, be vigorous; *noun* **vigor**
plūrimum posse, be most powerful
potēns, powerful; **potentia**, power (*espec.*
political); **potestās**, might, power, political
power

50.6 contain, receptacle

continēre, enclose, contain
inclūdere, enclose
inesse Dtg, be contained in

corbis, fiscina, quālus, basket; **sportula,**
sportella, little basket (for food); **cophinus,**
big basket; **quasillum**, wool basket
saccus, sack, bag; **rēticulum**, network bag;
culleus, follis (*dim. folliculus*), leather bag
arca (*dim. arcula*), chest, box; **cista** (*dim.*
cistella, cistellula, cistula), box; **capsa**
(*dim. capsula*), box (for books); **alabaster,**
box (for perfumes, unguents); **pyxis**, box
(for unguents, medicine)
armārium, cupboard
horreum, storeroom, granary; **cella penāria,**
oleāria, vīnāria, storeroom for provisions,
oil, wine; **apothēca**, storeroom (*espec.* for
wine); **carnārium**, larder

q.v. purse, 33.2

q.v. receptacles for liquids, 29.8

q.v. stables, 8.3

Appendix 1: Abbreviations

<i>Ab</i>	ablative	<i>m</i>	masculine
<i>Abtg</i>	ablative of thing (i. e. not person)	<i>n</i>	neuter
<i>Ac</i>	accusative	<i>P</i>	plural
<i>Acpn</i>	accusative of the person	<i>Pass.</i>	passive
<i>Actg</i>	accusative of the thing (i. e. not person)	<i>plp.</i>	in poets and late (post-Augustan) prose
<i>adj.</i>	adjective	<i>refl.</i>	reflexive
<i>comp.</i>	comparative	<i>S</i>	singular
<i>Dpn</i>	dative of person	<i>SN</i>	singular nominative
<i>Dtg</i>	dative of thing (i. e. not person)	<i>subj.</i>	subjunctive
<i>G</i>	genitive	<i>superl.</i>	superlative
<i>Gtg</i>	genitive of thing (i. e. not person)	<i>trans.</i>	transitive
<i>impers.</i>	impersonal	<i>usu.</i>	usually
<i>intrans.</i>	intransitive		

Appendix 2: Errors in the original publication

1.5	dēniquē → dēnique
3.3	fīnis → fīnis
3.6	mortālitās → mortālitās
5.1	adāctīō → adāctiō
5.3 („out“)	ēdere, ēmittere → second meaning omitted as unclear what Mr. Ripman meant ("et out")
5.8	in contrāriās partes → in contrāriās partēs
6.1	quousque? → quoūsqe?
6.3	religāre, bind back, back → religāre, bind back, bind
8	agrī cūltura → agrī cultūra
10	crīnīs → crīnis
12.1	ea quae subiectae sunt sēnsibus → ea quae subiecta sunt sēnsibus
13.2	fidibus dīscere → fidibus discere
14.2	āmīttere → āmittere
14.2	operire → operīre
14.3	nitens → nitēns
22.2	pālmōsus → palmōsus
22.6	lens → lēns
30.7	optimī cīves → optimī cīvēs
30.8	de vectīgālibus eximere → dē vectīgālibus eximere
32.1	sortītīō → sortitiō
32.2	sestertium → sēstertium
33.5	frūctus industriae perdere → frūctūs industriae perdere
33.7	vēnīre → venīre

- 36 instrūmentum → īnstrūmentum
37.1 armātūras → armātūrae
37.1 accēnsi → accēnsī
37.7 mūrās (cunīculō) subruere → mūrōs (cunīculō) subruere
37.7 custōdia → cūstōdia
38.7 sensus commūnis → sēnsus commūnis
38.8 crudēlitātem exercēre → crūdēlitātem exercēre
47.6 s. sūmere dē Acpn → s. sūmere dē Abpn